

# Text Analytics Toolbox™

Reference



# MATLAB®

R2019b

 MathWorks®

# How to Contact MathWorks



Latest news: [www.mathworks.com](http://www.mathworks.com)  
Sales and services: [www.mathworks.com/sales\\_and\\_services](http://www.mathworks.com/sales_and_services)  
User community: [www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral](http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral)  
Technical support: [www.mathworks.com/support/contact\\_us](http://www.mathworks.com/support/contact_us)



Phone: 508-647-7000



The MathWorks, Inc.  
1 Apple Hill Drive  
Natick, MA 01760-2098

## *Text Analytics Toolbox™ Reference*

© COPYRIGHT 2017–2019 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

## **Trademarks**

MATLAB and Simulink are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc. See [www.mathworks.com/trademarks](http://www.mathworks.com/trademarks) for a list of additional trademarks. Other product or brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

## **Patents**

MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see [www.mathworks.com/patents](http://www.mathworks.com/patents) for more information.

## **Revision History**

September 2017	Online Only	New for Version 1.0
March 2018	Online Only	Revised for Version 1.1 (Release 2018a)
September 2018	Online Only	Revised for Version 1.2 (Release 2018b)
March 2019	Online Only	Revised for Version 1.3 (Release 2019a)
September 2019	Online Only	Revised for Version 1.4 (Release 2019b)

<b>1</b>	<b>Functions – Alphabetical List</b>
----------	--------------------------------------



# Functions — Alphabetical List

---

## abbreviations

Table of common abbreviations

### Syntax

```
tbl = abbreviations  
tbl = abbreviations('Language', language)
```

### Description

Abbreviations containing periods like "appt.", "Dr.", and "fig." affect sentence detection. The `addSentenceDetails` and `addPartOfSpeechDetails` functions use tables of abbreviations to detect sentence boundaries. The `abbreviations` function outputs the default table used by these functions. You can use this table to help create custom tables of abbreviations to specify sentence detection behavior.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean language. The Japanese and Korean abbreviation lists are empty because in these languages, abbreviations do not usually impact sentence detection

`tbl = abbreviations` returns a table of common English abbreviations.

`tbl = abbreviations('Language', language)` specifies the abbreviation language.

### Examples

#### Table of Abbreviations

View a table of abbreviations. You can use this table to detect abbreviations and sentences when using `addSentenceDetails`.

```
tbl = abbreviations;  
head(tbl)
```

```
ans=8x2 table
  Abbreviation  Usage
-----
  "ATS"         regular
  "Ao"          regular
  "BEF"         regular
  "Ba"          regular
  "Bd"          regular
  "Bi"          regular
  "Bq"          regular
  "Cent"        regular
```

### Table of German Abbreviations

View a table of German abbreviations. Use this table to help create custom tables of abbreviations for sentence detection when using `addSentenceDetails`.

```
tbl = abbreviations('Language', 'de');
head(tbl)
```

```
ans=8x2 table
  Abbreviation  Usage
-----
  "A.T"         regular
  "ABl"         regular
  "Abb"         regular
  "Abdr"        regular
  "Abf"         regular
  "Abfl"        regular
  "Abh"         regular
  "Abk"         regular
```

## Input Arguments

### Language — Abbreviation language

'en' (default) | 'ja' | 'de' | 'ko'

Abbreviation language, specified as one of the following:

- 'en' - English
- 'ja' - Japanese
- 'de' - German
- 'ko' - Korean

If you specify 'ja' or 'ko', then the function returns an empty table. For more information about language support in Text Analytics Toolbox™, see “Language Considerations”.

## Output Arguments

### **tbl** — Table of abbreviations

table

Table of abbreviations. The `addSentenceDetails` and `splitSentences` functions, by default, use this table to detect sentence boundaries. This table only contains abbreviations typically written with periods.

The table has two variables:

- **Abbreviation** - Abbreviation, specified as a string
- **Usage** - Type of abbreviation, specified as a categorical scalar

The following table describes the possible values of **Usage** and the behavior of `addSentenceDetails` and `splitSentences` when observing abbreviations of these types.

<b>Usage</b>	<b>Behavior</b>	<b>Example Abbreviation</b>	<b>Example Text</b>	<b>Detected Sentences</b>
regular	If the next word is a capitalized sentence starter, then break at the trailing period. Otherwise, do	"appt."	"Book an appt. We'll meet then."	"Book an appt."  "We'll meet then."



Usage	Behavior	Example Abbreviation	Example Text	Detected Sentences
	not break at the trailing period.		"Book an appt. today."	"Book an appt. today."
inner	Do not break after trailing period.	"Dr."	"Dr. Smith."	"Dr. Smith."
reference	If the next token is not a number, then break at a trailing period. If the next token is a number, then do not break at the trailing period.	"fig."	"See fig. 3."	"See fig. 3."
			"Try a fig. They are nice."	"Try a fig." "They are nice."
unit	If the previous word is a number and the following word is a capitalized sentence starter, then break at a trailing period.	"in."	"The height is 30 in. The width is 10 in."	"The height is 30 in." "The width is 10 in."
	If the previous word is a number and the following word is not capitalized, then do not break at a trailing period.		"The item is 10 in. wide."	"The item is 10 in. wide."
	If the previous word is not a number, then break at a trailing period.		"Come in. Sit down."	"Come in." "Sit down."

The Japanese and Korean abbreviation lists are empty because in these languages, abbreviations do not usually impact sentence detection

### **See Also**

`addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument`

### **Topics**

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*

*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*

*“Language Considerations”*

**Introduced in R2018a**

# addDocument

Add documents to bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

## Syntax

```
newBag = addDocument(bag, documents)
```

## Description

`newBag = addDocument(bag, documents)` adds documents to the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

## Examples

### Add Documents to Bag-of-Words Model

Create a bag-of-words model from an array of tokenized documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"]);  
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =  
    bagOfWords with properties:  
        Counts: [2x7 double]  
        Vocabulary: [1x7 string]  
        NumWords: 7  
        NumDocuments: 2
```

Create another array of tokenized documents and add it to the same bag-of-words model.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
    "a third example of a short sentence"
```

```
    "another short sentence"]);  
newBag = addDocument(bag,documents)  
  
newBag =  
    bagOfWords with properties:  
  
        Counts: [4x9 double]  
        Vocabulary: [1x9 string]  
        NumWords: 9  
        NumDocuments: 4
```

## Import Text from Multiple Files Using a File Datastore

If your text data is contained in multiple files in a folder, then you can import the text data into MATLAB using a file datastore.

Create a file datastore for the example sonnet text files. The examples sonnets have file names "exampleSonnetN.txt", where N is the number of the sonnet. Specify the read function to be `extractFileText`.

```
readFcn = @extractFileText;  
fds = fileDatastore('exampleSonnet*.txt', 'ReadFcn', readFcn)
```

```
fds =  
    FileDatastore with properties:  
  
        Files: {  
            ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa  
            ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa  
            ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa  
            ... and 1 more  
        }  
        UniformRead: 0  
        ReadMode: 'file'  
        BlockSize: Inf  
        PreviewFcn: @extractFileText  
        ReadFcn: @extractFileText  
        AlternateFileSystemRoots: {}
```

Create an empty bag-of-words model.

```

bag = bagOfWords
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: []
      Vocabulary: [1x0 string]
      NumWords: 0
      NumDocuments: 0

```

Loop over the files in the datastore and read each file. Tokenize the text in each file and add the document to bag.

```

while hasdata(fds)
    str = read(fds);
    document = tokenizedDocument(str);
    bag = addDocument(bag,document);
end

```

View the updated bag-of-words model.

```

bag
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: [4x276 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x276 string]
      NumWords: 276
      NumDocuments: 4

```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a bagOfWords object or a bagOfNgrams object.

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If `documents` is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row vector representing a single document, where each element is a word.

## Output Arguments

### **newBag — Output model**

`bagOfWords` object | `bagOfNgrams` object

Output model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. The type of `newBag` is the same as the type of `bag`.

## See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `removeDocument` | `removeEmptyDocuments` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”*  
*“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”*  
*“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”*

**Introduced in R2017b**

# addEntityDetails

Add entity tags to documents

## Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = addEntityDetails(documents)
updatedDocuments = addEntityDetails(documents, Name, Value)
```

## Description

Use `addEntityDetails` to add entity tags to documents.

Use `addEntityDetails` to detect person names, locations, organizations, and other named entities in text. This process is known as *named entity recognition*.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`updatedDocuments = addEntityDetails(documents)` detects the named entities in documents. The function adds details to the tokens with missing entity details only. To get the entity details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

`updatedDocuments = addEntityDetails(documents, Name, Value)` also specifies additional options using one or more name-value pairs.

---

**Tip** Use `addEntityDetails` before using the `lower`, `upper`, `normalizeWords`, `removeWords`, and `removeStopWords` functions as `addEntityDetails` uses information that is removed by these functions.

---

## Examples

### Add Named Entity Tags to Documents

Create a tokenized document array.

```
str = [  
    "Mary moved to Natick, Massachusetts."  
    "John uses MATLAB at MathWorks."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Add the entity details to the documents using the `addEntityDetails` function. This function detects the named entities in the text and adds the details to the table returned by the `tokenDetails` function. View the updated token details of the first few tokens.

```
documents = addEntityDetails(documents);  
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

*tdetails=13×8 table*

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type
"Mary"	1	1	1	letters
"moved"	1	1	1	letters
"to"	1	1	1	letters
"Natick"	1	1	1	letters
","	1	1	1	punctuation
"Massachusetts"	1	1	1	letters
","	1	1	1	punctuation
"John"	2	1	1	letters
"uses"	2	1	1	letters
"MATLAB"	2	1	1	letters
"at"	2	1	1	letters
"MathWorks"	2	1	1	letters
","	2	1	1	punctuation

View the words tagged with the entities "person", "location", "organization", or "other". These words are the words not tagged with "non-entity".

```
idx = tdetails.Entity ~= "non-entity";  
tdetails.Token(idx)
```

*ans = 6×1 string array*

```
"Mary"  
"Natick"  
"Massachusetts"  
"John"  
"MATLAB"  
"MathWorks"
```



## Add Named Entity Tags to Japanese Text

Tokenize Japanese text using `tokenizedDocument`.

```
str = [
    "マリーさんはボストンからニューヨークに引っ越しました。"
    "駅で鈴木さんに迎えに行きます。"
    "東京は大阪より大きいですか？"
    "東京に行った時、新宿や渋谷などいろいろな所に訪れたました。"];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

For Japanese text, the software automatically adds named entity tags, so you do not need to use the `addEntityDetails` function. This software detects person names, locations, organizations, and other named entities. To view the entity details, use the `tokenDetails` function.

```
tetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tetails)
```

ans=8×8 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language	PartOfSpeech
"マリー"	1	1	letters	ja	proper-noun
"さん"	1	1	letters	ja	noun
"は"	1	1	letters	ja	adposition
"ボストン"	1	1	letters	ja	proper-noun
"から"	1	1	letters	ja	adposition
"ニューヨーク"	1	1	letters	ja	proper-noun
"に"	1	1	letters	ja	adposition
"引っ越し"	1	1	letters	ja	verb

View the words tagged with entity "person", "location", "organization", or "other". These words are the words not tagged "non-entity".

```
idx = tetails.Entity ~= "non-entity";
tetails(idx,:).Token
```

ans = 11×1 string array

```
"マリー"
"さん"
```

```
"ボストン"  
"ニューヨーク"  
"鈴木"  
"さん"  
"東京"  
"大阪"  
"東京"  
"新宿"  
"渋谷"
```

## Add Named Entity Tags to German Text

Tokenize German text using `tokenizedDocument`.

```
str = [  
  "Ernst zog von Frankfurt nach Berlin."  
  "Besuchen Sie Volkswagen in Wolfsburg."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

To add entity tags to German text, use the `addEntityDetails` function. This function detects person names, locations, organizations, and other named entities.

```
documents = addEntityDetails(documents);
```

To view the entity details, use the `tokenDetails` function.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);  
head(tdetails)
```

*ans=8x8 table*

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"Ernst"	1	1	1	letters	
"zog"	1	1	1	letters	
"von"	1	1	1	letters	
"Frankfurt"	1	1	1	letters	
"nach"	1	1	1	letters	
"Berlin"	1	1	1	letters	
","	1	1	1	punctuation	
"Besuchen"	2	1	1	letters	

View the words tagged with entity "person", "location", "organization", or "other". These words are the words not tagged with "non-entity".

```
idx = tdetails.Entity ~= "non-entity";
tdetails(idx,:)
```

ans=5×8 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"Ernst"	1	1	1	letters	de
"Frankfurt"	1	1	1	letters	de
"Berlin"	1	1	1	letters	de
"Volkswagen"	2	1	1	letters	de
"Wolfsburg"	2	1	1	letters	de

## Input Arguments

### documents — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'DiscardKnownValues', true` specifies to discard previously computed details and recompute them.

### RetokenizeMethod — Method to retokenize documents

'entity' (default) | 'none'

Method to retokenize documents, specified as one of the following:

- 'entity' - Transform the tokens for named entity recognition. The function merges tokens from the same entity into a single token.

- 'none' - Do not retokenize the documents.

### **DiscardKnownValues** — Option to discard previously computed details

false (default) | true

Option to discard previously computed details and recompute them, specified as true or false.

Data Types: logical

## Output Arguments

### **updatedDocuments** — Updated documents

tokenizedDocument array

Updated documents, returned as a tokenizedDocument array. To get the token details from updatedDocuments, use tokenDetails.

## Algorithms

### Language Details

tokenizedDocument objects contain details about the tokens including language details. The language details of the input documents determine the behavior of addEntityDetails. The tokenizedDocument function, by default, automatically detects the language of the input text. To specify the language details manually, use the 'Language' name-value pair argument of tokenizedDocument. To view the token details, use the tokenDetails function.

### See Also

abbreviations | addLanguageDetails | addLemmaDetails |  
addPartOfSpeechDetails | addSentenceDetails | addTypeDetails |  
corpusLanguage | splitSentences | tokenDetails | tokenizedDocument |  
topLevelDomains

## **Topics**

- "Prepare Text Data for Analysis"*
- "Create Simple Text Model for Classification"*
- "Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds"*
- "Language Considerations"*
- "Japanese Language Support"*
- "German Language Support"*

## **Introduced in R2019a**

## addLanguageDetails

Add language identifiers to documents

### Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = addLanguageDetails(documents)
updatedDocuments = addLanguageDetails(documents, Name, Value)
```

### Description

Use `addLanguageDetails` to add language identifiers to documents.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`updatedDocuments = addLanguageDetails(documents)` detects the language of documents and updates the token details. The function adds details to the tokens with missing language details only. To get the language details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

`updatedDocuments = addLanguageDetails(documents, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pairs.

---

**Tip** Use `addLanguageDetails` before using the `lower` and `upper` functions as `addLanguageDetails` uses information that is removed by these functions.

---

## Examples

### Add Language Details to Documents

Manually tokenize some text by splitting it into an array of words. Convert the manually tokenized text into a `tokenizedDocument` object by setting the `'TokenizeMethod'` option to `'none'`.

```
str = split("an example of a short sentence");
documents = tokenizedDocument(str, 'TokenizeMethod', 'none');
```

View the token details using tokenDetails.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

tdetails=6×2 table

Token	DocumentNumber
"an"	1
"example"	1
"of"	1
"a"	1
"short"	1
"sentence"	1

When you specify 'TokenizeMethod', 'none', the function does not automatically detect the language details of the documents. To add the language details, use the addLanguageDetails function. This function, by default, automatically detects the language.

```
documents = addLanguageDetails(documents);
```

View the updated token details using tokenDetails.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

tdetails=6×4 table

Token	DocumentNumber	Type	Language
"an"	1	letters	en
"example"	1	letters	en
"of"	1	letters	en
"a"	1	letters	en
"short"	1	letters	en
"sentence"	1	letters	en

## Input Arguments

### **documents — Input documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'DiscardKnownValues', true` specifies to discard previously computed details and recompute them.

### **Language — Language**

`'en' | 'ja' | 'de' | 'ko'`

Language, specified as one of the following:

- `'en'` - English
- `'ja'` - Japanese
- `'de'` - German
- `'ko'` - Korean

If you do not specify a value, then the function detects the language from the input text using the `corpusLanguage` function.

This option specifies the language details of the tokens. To view the language details of the tokens, use `tokenDetails`. These language details determine the behavior of the `removeStopWords`, `addPartOfSpeechDetails`, `normalizeWords`, `addSentenceDetails`, and `addEntityDetails` functions on the tokens.

For more information about language support in Text Analytics Toolbox, see “Language Considerations”.

### **DiscardKnownValues — Option to discard previously computed details**

`false` (default) | `true`



Option to discard previously computed details and recompute them, specified as `true` or `false`.

Data Types: `logical`

## Output Arguments

### **updatedDocuments** — Updated documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Updated documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array. To get the token details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

## See Also

`abbreviations` | `addEntityDetails` | `addEntityDetails` | `addLemmaDetails` | `addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `addTypeDetails` | `corpusLanguage` | `splitSentences` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument` | `topLevelDomains`

## Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”*  
*“Japanese Language Support”*  
*“Language Considerations”*  
*“German Language Support”*

**Introduced in R2018b**

## addLemmaDetails

Add lemma forms of tokens to documents

### Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = addLemmaDetails(documents)
updatedDocuments = addLemmaDetails(
documents, 'DiscardKnownValues', true)
```

### Description

Use `addLemmaDetails` to add lemma forms to documents.

The function supports English, Japanese, and Korean text.

`updatedDocuments = addLemmaDetails(documents)` adds lemma details to documents and updates the token details. To get the lemma details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

`updatedDocuments = addLemmaDetails(documents, 'DiscardKnownValues', true)` discards previously computed details and recomputes them.

---

**Tip** Use `addLemmaDetails` before using the `lower`, `upper`, and `normalizeWords` functions as `addLemmaDetails` uses information that is removed by these functions.

---

### Examples

#### Add Lemma Details to Documents

Create a tokenized document array.

```
str = [ ...
      "The dogs ran after the cat."
```

```
"I am building a house."];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Add lemma details to the documents using `addLemmaDetails`. This function lemmatizes the text and adds the lemma form of each token to the table returned by `tokenDetails`. View the updated token details of the first few tokens.

```
documents = addLemmaDetails(documents);
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tdetails)
```

ans=8×6 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language	Lemma
"The"	1	1	letters	en	"the"
"dogs"	1	1	letters	en	"dog"
"ran"	1	1	letters	en	"run"
"after"	1	1	letters	en	"after"
"the"	1	1	letters	en	"the"
"cat"	1	1	letters	en	"cat"
"."	1	1	punctuation	en	"."
"I"	2	1	letters	en	"i"

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Output Arguments

### **updatedDocuments** — Updated documents

tokenizedDocument array

Updated documents, returned as a tokenizedDocument array. To get the token details from updatedDocuments, use `tokenDetails`.

## See Also

`addEntityDetails` | `addLanguageDetails` | `addLemmaDetails` |  
`addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `addTypeDetails` |  
`normalizeWords` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Language Considerations”*

**Introduced in R2018b**

# addPartOfSpeechDetails

Add part-of-speech tags to documents

## Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents)
updatedDocuments = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents, Name, Value)
```

## Description

Use `addPartOfSpeechDetails` to add part-of-speech tags to documents.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`updatedDocuments = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents)` detects parts of speech in `documents` and updates the token details. The function, by default, retokenizes the text for part-of-speech tagging. For example, the function splits the word "you're" into the tokens "you" and "re". To get the part-of-speech details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

`updatedDocuments = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

---

**Tip** Use `addPartOfSpeechDetails` before using the `lower`, `upper`, `erasePunctuation`, `normalizeWords`, `removeWords`, and `removeStopWords` functions as `addPartOfSpeechDetails` uses information that is removed by these functions.

---

## Examples

### Add Part-of-Speech Details to Documents

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words

separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

View the token details of the first few tokens.

```
tetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tetails)
```

*ans=8×5 table*

<u>Token</u>	<u>DocumentNumber</u>	<u>LineNumber</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Language</u>
"fairest"	1	1	letters	en
"creatures"	1	1	letters	en
"desire"	1	1	letters	en
"increase"	1	1	letters	en
"thereby"	1	1	letters	en
"beautys"	1	1	letters	en
"rose"	1	1	letters	en
"might"	1	1	letters	en

Add part-of-speech details to the documents using the `addPartOfSpeechDetails` function. This function first adds sentence information to the documents, and then adds the part-of-speech tags to the table returned by `tokenDetails`. View the updated token details of the first few tokens.

```
documents = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents);
tetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tetails)
```

*ans=8×7 table*

<u>Token</u>	<u>DocumentNumber</u>	<u>SentenceNumber</u>	<u>LineNumber</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Language</u>
"fairest"	1	1	1	letters	en
"creatures"	1	1	1	letters	en
"desire"	1	1	1	letters	en
"increase"	1	1	1	letters	en
"thereby"	1	1	1	letters	en

"beautys"	1	1	1	letters	en
"rose"	1	1	1	letters	en
"might"	1	1	1	letters	en

## Get Part of Speech Details of Japanese Text

Tokenize Japanese text using `tokenizedDocument`.

```
str = [
  "恋に悩み、苦しむ。"
  "恋の悩みで 苦しむ。"
  "空に星が輝き、瞬いている。"
  "空の星が輝きを増している。"
  "駅までは遠くて、歩けない。"
  "遠くの駅まで歩けない。"
  "すもももももものうち。"];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

For Japanese text, you can get the part-of-speech details using `tokenDetails`. For English text, you must first use `addPartOfSpeechDetails`.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tdetails)
```

ans=8×8 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language	PartOfSpeech
"恋"	1	1	letters	ja	noun
"に"	1	1	letters	ja	adposition
"悩み"	1	1	letters	ja	verb
"、"	1	1	punctuation	ja	punctuation
"苦しむ"	1	1	letters	ja	verb
"。"	1	1	punctuation	ja	punctuation
"恋"	2	1	letters	ja	noun
"の"	2	1	letters	ja	adposition

## Get Part of Speech Details of German Text

Tokenize German text using `tokenizedDocument`.

```
str = [  
  "Guten Morgen. Wie geht es dir?"  
  "Heute wird ein guter Tag."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)  
  
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    8 tokens: Guten Morgen . Wie geht es dir ?  
    6 tokens: Heute wird ein guter Tag .
```

To get the part of speech details for German text, first use `addPartOfSpeechDetails`.

```
documents = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents);
```

To view the part of speech details, use the `tokenDetails` function.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);  
head(tdetails)
```

ans=8x7 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"Guten"	1	1	1	letters	de
"Morgen"	1	1	1	letters	de
","	1	1	1	punctuation	de
"Wie"	1	2	1	letters	de
"geht"	1	2	1	letters	de
"es"	1	2	1	letters	de
"dir"	1	2	1	letters	de
"?"	1	2	1	punctuation	de

## Input Arguments

**documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array



Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1,Value1, . . . ,NameN,ValueN`.

Example: `'DiscardKnownValues', true` specifies to discard previously computed details and recompute them.

### RetokenizeMethod – Method to retokenize documents

`'part-of-speech'` (default) | `'none'`

Method to retokenize documents, specified as one of the following:

- `'part-of-speech'` - Transform the tokens for part-of-speech tagging. The function performs these tasks:
  - Split compound words. For example, split the compound word "wanna" into the tokens "want" and "to". This includes compound words containing apostrophes. For example, the function splits the word "don't" into the tokens "do" and "n't".
  - Merge periods with preceding abbreviations. For example, merge the tokens "Mr" and "." into the token "Mr.".
  - Merge runs of periods into ellipses. For example, merge three instances of "." into the single token "...".
- `'none'` - Do not retokenize the documents.

### DiscardKnownValues – Option to discard previously computed details

`false` (default) | `true`

Option to discard previously computed details and recompute them, specified as `true` or `false`.

Data Types: `logical`

## Output Arguments

### **updatedDocuments** — Updated documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Updated documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array. To get the token details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

## Algorithms

If the input documents do not contain sentence details, then the function first runs `addSentenceDetails`.

## See Also

`addEntityDetails` | `addLanguageDetails` | `addLemmaDetails` |  
`addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `addTypeDetails` |  
`normalizeWords` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Language Considerations”  
“Japanese Language Support”  
“German Language Support”

### **Introduced in R2018b**

# addSentenceDetails

Add sentence numbers to documents

## Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = addSentenceDetails(documents)
updatedDocuments = addSentenceDetails(documents, Name, Value)
```

## Description

Use `addSentenceDetails` to add sentence information to documents.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`updatedDocuments = addSentenceDetails(documents)` detects the sentence boundaries in `documents` and updates the token details. To get the sentence details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

`updatedDocuments = addSentenceDetails(documents, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

---

**Tip** Use `addSentenceDetails` before using the `lower`, `upper`, `erasePunctuation`, `normalizeWords`, `removeWords`, and `removeStopWords` functions as `addSentenceDetails` uses information that is removed by these functions.

---

## Examples

### Add Sentence Details to Documents

Create a tokenized document array.

```
str = [ ...
    "This is an example document. It has two sentences."
```

```
    "This document has one sentence."  
    "Here is another example document. It also has two sentences."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Add sentence details to the documents using `addSentenceDetails`. This function adds the sentence numbers to the table returned by `tokenDetails`. View the updated token details of the first few tokens.

```
documents = addSentenceDetails(documents);  
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);  
head(tdetails)
```

ans=8×6 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"This"	1	1	1	letters	e
"is"	1	1	1	letters	e
"an"	1	1	1	letters	e
"example"	1	1	1	letters	e
"document"	1	1	1	letters	e
". "	1	1	1	punctuation	e
"It"	1	2	1	letters	e
"has"	1	2	1	letters	e

View the token details of the second sentence of the third document.

```
idx = tdetails.DocumentNumber == 3 & ...  
    tdetails.SentenceNumber == 2;  
tdetails(idx,:)
```

ans=6×6 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"It"	3	2	1	letters	e
"also"	3	2	1	letters	e
"has"	3	2	1	letters	e
"two"	3	2	1	letters	e
"sentences"	3	2	1	letters	e
". "	3	2	1	punctuation	e

## Input Arguments

### documents — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: 'Abbreviations', ["cm" "mm" "in"] specifies to detect sentence boundaries where these abbreviations are followed by a period and a capitalized sentence starter.

### Abbreviations — List of abbreviations

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors | table

List of abbreviations, specified as a string array, character vector, cell array of character vectors, or a table.

If `Abbreviations` is a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors, then the function treats these as regular abbreviations. If the next word is a capitalized sentence starter, then the function breaks at the trailing period. The function ignores any differences in the letter case of the abbreviations. Specify the sentence starters using the `Starters` name-value pair.

To specify different behaviors when splitting sentences at abbreviations, specify `Abbreviations` as a table. The table must have variables named `Abbreviation` and `Usage`, where `Abbreviation` contains the abbreviations, and `Usage` contains the type of each abbreviation. The following table describes the possible values of `Usage`, and the behavior of the function when passed abbreviations of these types.

<b>Usage</b>	<b>Behavior</b>	<b>Example Abbreviation</b>	<b>Example Text</b>	<b>Detected Sentences</b>
regular	If the next word is a capitalized sentence starter, then break at the trailing period. Otherwise, do not break at the trailing period.	"appt."	"Book an appt. We'll meet then."	"Book an appt." "We'll meet then."
			"Book an appt. today."	"Book an appt. today."
inner	Do not break after trailing period.	"Dr."	"Dr. Smith."	"Dr. Smith."
reference	If the next token is not a number, then break at a trailing period. If the next token is a number, then do not break at the trailing period.	"fig."	"See fig. 3."	"See fig. 3."
			"Try a fig. They are nice."	"Try a fig." "They are nice."
unit	If the previous word is a number and the following word is a capitalized sentence starter, then break at a trailing period.	"in."	"The height is 30 in. The width is 10 in."	"The height is 30 in." "The width is 10 in."

Usage	Behavior	Example Abbreviation	Example Text	Detected Sentences
	If the previous word is a number and the following word is not capitalized, then do not break at a trailing period.		"The item is 10 in. wide."	"The item is 10 in. wide."
	If the previous word is not a number, then break at a trailing period.		"Come in. Sit down."	"Come in." "Sit down."

The default value is the output of the `abbreviations` function.

**Tip** By default, the function treats single letter abbreviations, such as "V.", or tokens with mixed single letters and periods, such as "U.S.A." as regular abbreviations. You do not need to include these abbreviations in `Abbreviations`.

Example: ["cm" "mm" "in"]

Data Types: char | string | table | cell

### Starters – Words that start a sentence

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Words that start a sentence, specified as a string array, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors. If a sentence starter appears capitalized after a regular abbreviation, then the function detects a sentence boundary at the trailing period. The function ignores any differences in the letter case of the sentence starters.

The default value is the output of the `stopWords` function.

Data Types: char | string | cell

### DiscardKnownValues – Option to discard previously computed details

false (default) | true

Option to discard previously computed details and recompute them, specified as `true` or `false`.

Data Types: `logical`

## Output Arguments

### **updatedDocuments** — Updated documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Updated documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array. To get the token details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

## More About

### Language Considerations

The `addSentenceDetails` function detects sentence boundaries based on punctuation characters and line number information. For English and German text, the function also uses a list of abbreviations passed to the function.

For other languages, you might need to specify your own list of abbreviations for sentence detection. To do this, use the 'Abbreviations' option of `addSentenceDetails`.

## Algorithms

If emoticons or emoji characters appear after a terminating punctuation character, then the function splits the sentence after the emoticons and emoji.

## See Also

`abbreviations` | `addEntityDetails` | `addLanguageDetails` | `addLemmaDetails` | `addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addTypeDetails` | `splitSentences` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument`



## **Topics**

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Language Considerations”

**Introduced in R2018a**

## addTypeDetails

Add token type details to documents

### Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = addTypeDetails(documents)
updatedDocuments = addTypeDetails(documents, Name, Value)
```

### Description

`updatedDocuments = addTypeDetails(documents)` detects the token types in `documents` and updates the token details. The function adds type details to the tokens with unknown type only. To get the token types from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

`updatedDocuments = addTypeDetails(documents, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pairs.

---

**Tip** Use `addTypeDetails` before using the `lower`, `upper`, and `erasePunctuation` functions as `addTypeDetails` uses information that is removed by these functions.

---

### Examples

#### Add Token Type Details to Documents

Convert manually tokenized text into a `tokenizedDocument` object, setting the 'TokenizeMethod' option to 'none'.

```
str = ["For" "more" "information" ", " "see" "https://www.mathworks.com" "."];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str, 'TokenizeMethod', 'none')

documents =
    tokenizedDocument:
```

7 tokens: For more information , see <https://www.mathworks.com> .

View the token details using the `tokenDetails` function.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

```
tdetails=7x2 table
           Token           DocumentNumber
-----
"For"           1
"more"          1
"information"   1
", "            1
"see"           1
"https://www.mathworks.com" 1
"."            1
```

If you set 'TokenizeMethod' to 'none' in the call to the `tokenizedDocument` function, then it does not detect the types of the tokens. To add the token type details, use the `addTypeDetails` function.

```
documents = addTypeDetails(documents);
```

View the updated token details.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

```
tdetails=7x3 table
           Token           DocumentNumber           Type
-----
"For"           1           letters
"more"          1           letters
"information"   1           letters
", "            1           punctuation
"see"           1           letters
"https://www.mathworks.com" 1           web-address
"."            1           punctuation
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents — Input documents**

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'TopLevelDomains', ["com" "net" "org"]` specifies the top-level domains "com", "net", and "org" for web address detection.

### **TopLevelDomains — Top-level domains**

character vector | string array | cell array of character vectors

Top-level domains to use for web address detection, specified as a character vector, string array, or cell array of character vectors.

If you do not specify `TopLevelDomains`, then the function uses the output of the `topLevelDomains` function.

Example: `["com" "net" "org"]`

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `cell`

### **DiscardKnownValues — Option to discard previously computed details**

`false` (default) | `true`

Option to discard previously computed details and recompute them, specified as `true` or `false`.

Data Types: `logical`

## Output Arguments

### **updatedDocuments — Updated documents**

tokenizedDocument array

Updated documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array. To get the token details from `updatedDocuments`, use `tokenDetails`.

## See Also

`abbreviations` | `addEntityDetails` | `addLanguageDetails` | `addLemmaDetails` | `addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `corpusLanguage` | `splitSentences` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument` | `topLevelDomains`

## Topics

*"Prepare Text Data for Analysis"*

*"Create Simple Text Model for Classification"*

*"Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds"*

## Introduced in R2018b

## bagOfNgrams

Bag-of-n-grams model

### Description

A bag-of-n-grams model records the number of times that each n-gram appears in each document of a collection. An n-gram is a collection of  $n$  successive words.

bagOfNgrams does not split text into words. To create an array of tokenized documents, see `tokenizedDocument`.

### Creation

### Syntax

```
bag = bagOfNgrams
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents)
bag = bagOfNgrams( ____, 'NgramLengths', lengths)
bag = bagOfNgrams(uniqueNgrams, counts)
```

### Description

`bag = bagOfNgrams` creates an empty bag-of-n-grams model.

`bag = bagOfNgrams(documents)` creates a bag-of-n-grams model and counts the bigrams (pairs of words) in `documents`.

`bag = bagOfNgrams( ____, 'NgramLengths', lengths)` counts n-grams of the specified lengths using any of the previous syntaxes.

`bag = bagOfNgrams(uniqueNgrams, counts)` creates a bag-of-n-grams model using the n-grams in `uniqueNgrams` and the corresponding frequency counts in `counts`. If `uniqueNgrams` contains `<missing>` values, then the corresponding values in `counts` are ignored.

## Input Arguments

### **documents — Input documents**

tokenizedDocument array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If `documents` is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row vector representing a single document, where each element is a word.

### **uniqueNgrams — Unique n-gram list**

string array | cell array of character vectors

Unique n-gram list, specified as a `NumNgrams`-by-`maxN` string array or cell array of character vectors, where `NumNgrams` is the number of unique n-grams, and `maxN` is the length of the largest n-gram.

The value of `uniqueNgrams(i, j)` is the `j`th word of the `i`th n-gram. If the number of words in the `i`th n-gram is less than `maxN`, then the remaining entries of the `i`th row of `uniqueNgrams` are empty.

If `uniqueNgrams` contains `<missing>`, then the function ignores the corresponding values in `counts`.

Each n-gram must have at least one word.

Example: ["An" ""; "An" "example"; "example" ""]

Data Types: string | cell

### **counts — Frequency counts of n-grams**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of n-grams corresponding to the rows of `uniqueNgrams`, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. The value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the n-gram `uniqueNgrams(j, :)` appears in the `i`th document.

`counts` must have as many columns as `uniqueNgrams` has rows.

### **lengths — Lengths of n-grams**

2 (default) | positive integer | vector of positive integers

Lengths of n-grams, specified as a positive integer or a vector of positive integers.

## Properties

### Counts — N-gram counts per document

sparse matrix

N-gram counts per document, specified as a sparse matrix.

### Ngrams — Unique n-grams in model

string array

Unique n-grams in the model, specified as a string array. `Ngrams(i, j)` is the  $j$ th word of the  $i$ th n-gram. If the number of columns of `Ngrams` is greater than the number of words in the n-gram, then the remaining entries are empty.

### NgramLengths — Lengths of n-grams

2 (default) | positive integer | vector of positive integers

Lengths of n-grams, specified as a positive integer or a vector of positive integers.

### Vocabulary — Unique words in model

string vector

Unique words in the model, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: `string`

### NumNgrams — Number of n-grams seen

nonnegative integer

Number of n-grams seen, specified as a nonnegative integer.

### NumDocuments — Number of documents seen

nonnegative integer

Number of documents seen, specified as a nonnegative integer.

## Object Functions

`encode`

Encode documents as matrix of word or n-gram counts

`tfidf`

Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix

`topkngrams`

Most frequent n-grams



addDocument	Add documents to bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model
removeDocument	Remove documents from bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model
removeEmptyDocuments	Remove empty documents from tokenized document array, bag-of-words model, or bag-of-n-grams model
removeNgrams	Remove n-grams from bag-of-n-grams model
removeInfrequentNgrams	Remove infrequently seen n-grams from bag-of-n-grams model
join	Combine multiple bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams models
wordcloud	Create word cloud chart from text, bag-of-words model, bag-of-n-grams model, or LDA model

## Examples

### Create Bag-of-N-Grams Model

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
documents(1:10)
```

```
ans =
```

```
10x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys legacy
61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants sake
68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make sweet
64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappeared
70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights joy
70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless
69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

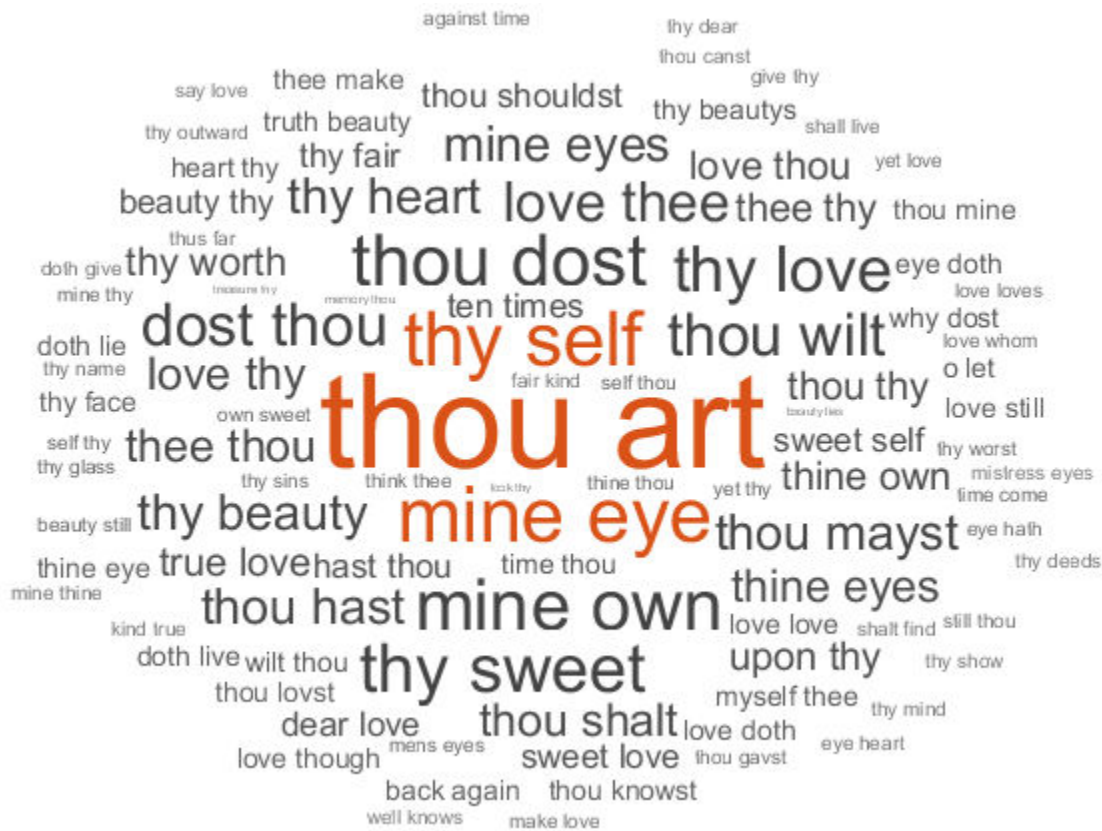
Create a bag-of-n-grams model.

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
      Counts: [154x8799 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
      Ngrams: [8799x2 string]  
      NgramLengths: 2  
      NumNgrams: 8799  
      NumDocuments: 154
```

Visualize the model using a word cloud.

```
figure  
wordcloud(bag);
```



### Count N-Grams of Different Lengths

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-n-grams model. To count n-grams of length 2 and 3 (bigrams and trigrams), specify 'NgramLengths' to be the vector [2 3].

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents, 'NgramLengths', [2 3])
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
  
    Counts: [154×18022 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1×3092 string]  
    Ngrams: [18022×3 string]  
  NgramLengths: [2 3]  
    NumNgrams: 18022  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

View the 10 most common n-grams of length 2 (bigrams).

```
topkngrams(bag, 10, 'NgramLengths', 2)
```

```
ans=10×3 table
```

Ngram			Count	NgramLength
"thou"	"art"	""	34	2
"mine"	"eye"	""	15	2
"thy"	"self"	""	14	2
"thou"	"dost"	""	13	2
"mine"	"own"	""	13	2
"thy"	"sweet"	""	12	2
"thy"	"love"	""	11	2
"dost"	"thou"	""	10	2
"thou"	"wilt"	""	10	2
"love"	"thee"	""	9	2

View the 10 most common n-grams of length 3 (trigrams).

```
topkngrams(bag, 10, 'NgramLengths', 3)
```

```
ans=10×3 table
```

Ngram			Count	NgramLength
"thy"	"sweet"	"self"	4	3

"why"	"dost"	"thou"	4	3
"thy"	"self"	"thy"	3	3
"thou"	"thy"	"self"	3	3
"mine"	"eye"	"heart"	3	3
"thou"	"shalt"	"find"	3	3
"fair"	"kind"	"true"	3	3
"thou"	"art"	"fair"	2	3
"love"	"thy"	"self"	2	3
"thy"	"self"	"thou"	2	3

### Create Bag-of-N-Grams Model from Unique N-Grams and Counts

Create a bag-of-n-grams model using a string array of unique n-grams and a matrix of counts.

Load the example n-grams and counts from `sonnetsBigramCounts.mat`. This file contains a string array `uniqueNgrams`, which contains the unique n-grams, and the matrix `counts`, which contains the n-gram frequency counts.

```
load sonnetsBigramCounts.mat
```

View the first few n-grams in `uniqueNgrams`.

```
uniqueNgrams(1:10, :)
```

```
ans = 10x2 string array
    "fairest"    "creatures"
    "creatures"  "desire"
    "desire"     "increase"
    "increase"   "thereby"
    "thereby"    "beautys"
    "beautys"    "rose"
    "rose"       "might"
    "might"      "never"
    "never"      "die"
    "die"        "riper"
```

Create the bag-of-n-grams model.

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(uniqueNgrams, counts)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
    Counts: [154x8799 double]  
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    Ngrams: [8799x2 string]  
    NgramLengths: 2  
    NumNgrams: 8799  
    NumDocuments: 154
```

## See Also

[addDocument](#) | [bagOfWords](#) | [encode](#) | [removeDocument](#) | [removeEmptyDocuments](#) | [removeInfrequentNgrams](#) | [removeNgrams](#) | [tfidf](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [topkngrams](#)

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)  
[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)  
[“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”](#)  
[“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”](#)  
[“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”](#)  
[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

## Introduced in R2018a

# bagOfWords

Bag-of-words model

## Description

A bag-of-words model (also known as a term-frequency counter) records the number of times that words appear in each document of a collection.

`bagOfWords` does not split text into words. To create an array of tokenized documents, see `tokenizedDocument`.

## Creation

### Syntax

```
bag = bagOfWords  
bag = bagOfWords(documents)  
bag = bagOfWords(uniqueWords, counts)
```

### Description

`bag = bagOfWords` creates an empty bag-of-words model.

`bag = bagOfWords(documents)` counts the words appearing in `documents` and returns a bag-of-words model.

`bag = bagOfWords(uniqueWords, counts)` creates a bag-of-words model using the words in `uniqueWords` and the corresponding frequency counts in `counts`.

### Input Arguments

#### **documents** — Input documents

`tokenizedDocument` array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If `documents` is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row vector representing a single document, where each element is a word.

### **uniqueWords — Unique word list**

string vector | cell array of character vectors

Unique word list, specified as a string vector or a cell array of character vectors. If `uniqueWords` contains `<missing>`, then the function ignores the missing values. The size of `uniqueWords` must be 1-by- $V$  where  $V$  is the number of columns of `counts`.

Example: ["an" "example" "list"]

Data Types: string | cell

### **counts — Frequency counts of words**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words corresponding to `uniqueWords`, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. The value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the word `uniqueWords(j)` appears in the  $i$ th document.

`counts` must have `numel(uniqueWords)` columns.

## Properties

### **Counts — Word counts per document**

sparse matrix

Word counts per document, specified as a sparse matrix.

### **NumDocuments — Number of documents seen**

nonnegative integer

Number of documents seen, specified as a nonnegative integer.

### **NumWords — Number of words in model**

nonnegative integer

Number of words in the model, specified as a nonnegative integer.



**Vocabulary — Unique words in model**

string vector

Unique words in the model, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: string

**Object Functions**

encode	Encode documents as matrix of word or n-gram counts
tfidf	Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix
topkwords	Most important words in bag-of-words model or LDA topic
addDocument	Add documents to bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model
removeDocument	Remove documents from bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model
removeEmptyDocuments	Remove empty documents from tokenized document array, bag-of-words model, or bag-of-n-grams model
removeWords	Remove selected words from documents or bag-of-words model
removeInfrequentWords	Remove words with low counts from bag-of-words model
join	Combine multiple bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams models
wordcloud	Create word cloud chart from text, bag-of-words model, bag-of-n-grams model, or LDA model

**Examples****Create Bag-of-Words Model**

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
      NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154
```

View the top 10 words and their total counts.

```
tbl = topkwords(bag,10)
```

```
tbl=10x2 table
      Word      Count
      -----
      "thy"      281
      "thou"     234
      "love"     162
      "thee"     161
      "doth"     88
      "mine"     63
      "shall"    59
      "eyes"     56
      "sweet"    55
      "time"     53
```

## Create Bag-of-Words Model from Unique Words and Counts

Create a bag-of-words model using a string array of unique words and a matrix of word counts.

```
uniqueWords = ["a" "an" "another" "example" "final" "sentence" "third"];
counts = [ ...
    1 2 0 1 0 1 0;
    0 0 3 1 0 4 0;
    1 0 0 5 0 3 1;
    1 0 0 1 7 0 0];
bag = bagOfWords(uniqueWords,counts)
```

```

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [4x7 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x7 string]
    NumWords: 7
  NumDocuments: 4

```

### Import Text from Multiple Files Using a File Datastore

If your text data is contained in multiple files in a folder, then you can import the text data into MATLAB using a file datastore.

Create a file datastore for the example sonnet text files. The examples sonnets have file names "exampleSonnetN.txt", where N is the number of the sonnet. Specify the read function to be `extractFileText`.

```

readFcn = @extractFileText;
fds = fileDatastore('exampleSonnet*.txt', 'ReadFcn', readFcn)

```

```

fds =
  FileDatastore with properties:

      Files: {
          ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa
          ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa
          ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa
          ... and 1 more
        }
  UniformRead: 0
    ReadMode: 'file'
   BlockSize: Inf
   PreviewFcn: @extractFileText
    ReadFcn: @extractFileText
  AlternateFileSystemRoots: {}

```

Create an empty bag-of-words model.

```

bag = bagOfWords

```

```
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

    Counts: []
    Vocabulary: [1x0 string]
    NumWords: 0
    NumDocuments: 0
```

Loop over the files in the datastore and read each file. Tokenize the text in each file and add the document to bag.

```
while hasdata(fds)
    str = read(fds);
    document = tokenizedDocument(str);
    bag = addDocument(bag,document);
end
```

View the updated bag-of-words model.

```
bag
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

    Counts: [4x276 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x276 string]
    NumWords: 276
    NumDocuments: 4
```

## Remove Stop Words from Bag-of-Words Model

Remove the stop words from a bag-of-words model by inputting a list of stop words to `removeWords`. Stop words are words such as "a", "the", and "in" which are commonly removed from text before analysis.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
newBag = removeWords(bag,stopWords)
```

```

newBag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [2x4 double]
  Vocabulary: ["example"    "short"    "sentence"    "second"]
    NumWords: 4
  NumDocuments: 2

```

### Most Frequent Words of Bag-of-Words Model

Create a table of the most frequent words of a bag-of-words model.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```

filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);

```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```

bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154

```

Find the top five words.

```
T = topkwords(bag);
```

Find the top 20 words in the model.

```
k = 20;  
T = topkwords(bag, k)
```

```
T=20x2 table  
  Word      Count  
-----  
"thy"      281  
"thou"     234  
"love"     162  
"thee"     161  
"doth"     88  
"mine"     63  
"shall"    59  
"eyes"     56  
"sweet"    55  
"time"     53  
"beauty"   52  
"nor"      52  
"art"      51  
"yet"      51  
"o"        50  
"heart"    50  
  ⋮
```

## Create Tf-idf Matrix

Create a Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix from a bag-of-words model.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str, newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```

bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: [154x3092 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
      NumWords: 3092
      NumDocuments: 154

```

Create a tf-idf matrix. View the first 10 rows and columns.

```

M = tfidf(bag);
full(M(1:10,1:10))

```

```
ans = 10x10
```

3.6507	4.3438	2.7344	3.6507	4.3438	2.2644	3.2452	3.8918	2.4
0	0	0	0	0	4.5287	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	2.7344	0	0	0	0	0	0

## Create Word Cloud from Bag-of-Words Model

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```

filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);

```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```





## Create Bag-of-Words Model in Parallel

If your text data is contained in multiple files in a folder, then you can import the text data and create a bag-of-words model in parallel using `parfor`. If you have Parallel Computing Toolbox™ installed, then the `parfor` loop runs in parallel, otherwise, it runs in serial. Use `join` to combine an array of bag-of-words models into one model.

Create a bag-of-words model from a collection of files. The examples sonnets have file names "exampleSonnetN.txt", where N is the number of the sonnet. Get a list of the files and their locations using `dir`.

```
fileLocation = fullfile(matlabroot, 'examples', 'textanalytics', 'exampleSonnet*.txt');
fileInfo = dir(fileLocation)
```

```
fileInfo=5×6 struct
    name
    folder
    date
    bytes
    isdir
    datenum
```

Initialize an empty bag-of-words model and then loop over the files and create an array of bag-of-words models.

```
bag = bagOfWords;

numFiles = numel(fileInfo);
parfor i = 1:numFiles
    f = fileInfo(i);
    filename = fullfile(f.folder, f.name);

    textData = extractFileText(filename);
    document = tokenizedDocument(textData);
    bag(i) = bagOfWords(document);
end
```

```
Starting parallel pool (parpool) using the 'local' profile ...
Connected to the parallel pool (number of workers: 12).
```

Combine the bag-of-words models using `join`.

```
bag = join(bag)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
      Counts: [5x3275 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x3275 string]  
      NumWords: 3275  
      NumDocuments: 5
```

### Tips

- If you intend to use a held out test set for your work, then partition your text data before using `bagOfWords`. Otherwise, the bag-of-words model may bias your analysis.

### See Also

`addDocument` | `bagOfNgrams` | `encode` | `removeDocument` | `removeEmptyDocuments` | `removeInfrequentWords` | `removeWords` | `tfidf` | `tokenizedDocument` | `topkeywords`

### Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”*  
*“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”*  
*“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”*

**Introduced in R2017b**

## context

Search documents for word or n-gram occurrences in context

### Syntax

```
T = context(documents, word)
T = context(documents, ngram)
T = context( ____, contextLength)
T = context( ____, 'Source', source)
```

### Description

`T = context(documents, word)` searches for occurrences of a single word in documents and returns a table showing word in context and its locations.

`T = context(documents, ngram)` searches for occurrences of an n-gram in documents.

`T = context( ____, contextLength)` specifies the length of the context to return.

`T = context( ____, 'Source', source)` displays the context in the original source string source if the word is found.

### Examples

#### Search Documents for Word Occurrences

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
```

```
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Search for the word "life".

```
tbl = context(documents,"life");
head(tbl)
```

*ans=8x3 table*

Context	Document	Word
"consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless shalt "	9	10
"ainted counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil"	16	35
"d counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil pupi"	16	36
" heaven knows tomb hides life shows half parts write b"	17	14
"he eyes long lives gives life thee "	18	69
"tender embassy love thee life made four two alone sink"	45	23
"ves beauty though lovers life beauty shall black lines"	63	50
"s shorn away live second life second head ere beautys "	68	27

View the occurrences in a string array.

`tbl.Context`

```
ans = 23x1 string array
"consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless shalt "
"ainted counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil"
"d counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil pupi"
" heaven knows tomb hides life shows half parts write b"
"he eyes long lives gives life thee "
"tender embassy love thee life made four two alone sink"
"ves beauty though lovers life beauty shall black lines"
"s shorn away live second life second head ere beautys "
"e rehearse let love even life decay lest wise world lo"
"st bail shall carry away life hath line interest memor"
"art thou hast lost dregs life prey worms body dead cow"
"
  thoughts food life sweetseasond showers gro"
"tten name hence immortal life shall though once gone w"
" beauty mute others give life bring tomb lives life fa"
"ve life bring tomb lives life fair eyes poets praise d"
" steal thyself away term life thou art assured mine li"
"fe thou art assured mine life longer thy love stay dep"
" fear worst wrongs least life hath end better state be"
```

```
"anst vex inconstant mind life thy revolt doth lie o ha"
" fame faster time wastes life thou preventst scythe cr"
"ess harmful deeds better life provide public means pub"
"ate hate away threw savd life saying          "
" many nymphs vovd chaste life keep came tripping maide"
```

### Search Documents for N-Gram Occurrences

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Search for the bigram "dost thou".

```
ngram = ["dost" "thou"];
tbl = context(documents,ngram);
head(tbl)
```

*ans=8x3 table*

Context	Document	Word
"unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy "	4	4
"ee beauteous niggard why dost thou abuse bounteous largess "	4	25
"ve profitless usurer why dost thou great sum sums yet canst"	4	35
"eavy eyelids weary night dost thou desire slumbers broken s"	61	10
" sweet lovely dost thou make shame like canker f"	95	3
"hy budding name o sweets dost thou thy sins enclose tongue "	95	19
"ruth beauty love depends dost thou therein dignified make a"	101	16
" thou blind fool love dost thou mine eyes behold know be"	137	5

View the occurrences in a string array.

```
tbl.Context
```

```
ans = 10x1 string array
"unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy "
"ee beauteous niggard why dost thou abuse bounteous largess "
"ve profitless usurer why dost thou great sum sums yet canst"
"eavy eyelids weary night dost thou desire slumbers broken s"
"      sweet lovely dost thou make shame like canker f"
"hy budding name o sweets dost thou thy sins enclose tongue "
"ruth beauty love depends dost thou therein dignified make a"
"      thou blind fool love dost thou mine eyes behold know be"
"h rebel powers array why dost thou pine suffer dearth paint"
"y large cost short lease dost thou upon thy fading mansion "
```

## Specify Context Length

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Search for the word "life" and return each occurrence with a 15-character context before and after.

```
tbl = context(documents,"life",15);
head(tbl)
```

```
ans=8x3 table
```

Context	Document	Word
"hy self single life ah thou issuel"	9	10
"nterfeit lines life life repair ti"	16	35
"eit lines life life repair times p"	16	36
"ows tomb hides life shows half par"	17	14
"ng lives gives life thee "	18	69
"assy love thee life made four two "	45	23
" though lovers life beauty shall b"	63	50

```
"ay live second life second head er"
```

68

27

View the occurrences in a string array.

```
tbl.Context
```

```
ans = 23x1 string array
    "hy self single life ah thou issuel"
    "nterfeit lines life life repair ti"
    "eit lines life life repair times p"
    "ows tomb hides life shows half par"
    "ng lives gives life thee          "
    "assy love thee life made four two "
    " though lovers life beauty shall b"
    "ay live second life second head er"
    " let love even life decay lest wis"
    "all carry away life hath line inte"
    "ast lost dregs life prey worms bod"
    " thoughts food life sweetseasond s"
    "hence immortal life shall though o"
    "te others give life bring tomb liv"
    "ing tomb lives life fair eyes poet"
    "self away term life thou art assur"
    "t assured mine life longer thy lov"
    "t wrongs least life hath end bette"
    "nconstant mind life thy revolt dot"
    "er time wastes life thou preventst"
    "l deeds better life provide public"
    "way threw savd life saying          "
    "hs vowd chaste life keep came trip"
```

## Specify Source Text

Specify source text to display context.

Load the `sonnets.txt` data and split it into separate documents.

```
txt = extractFileText("sonnets.txt");
paragraphs = split(txt,[newline newline]);
```

Extract the sonnets from paragraphs. The first sonnet is the fifth element of paragraphs, and the remaining sonnets appear in every second element afterward.

```
sonnets = paragraphs(5:2:end);
documents = tokenizedDocument(sonnets);
```

Normalize the text, then search for the word "life".

```
documentsNormalized = normalizeWords(documents);
T = context(documentsNormalized, "life")
```

T=23×3 table

Context	Document	Word
"sum'st thy self in singl life ? ah ! if thou issueless"	9	18
" : so should the line of life that life repair , which"	16	73
"ld the line of life that life repair , which thi , tim"	16	75
"s a tomb which hide your life , and show not half your"	17	34
" live thi , and thi give life to thee . "	18	128
"ssi of love to thee , my life , be made of four , with"	45	53
"eauti , though my lover' life : hi beauti shall in the"	63	100
" awai , to live a second life on second head ; er beau"	68	59
"t your love even with my life decai ; lest the wise wo"	71	118
"shall carri me awai , my life hath in thi line some in"	74	18
"ast but lost the dreg of life , the prei of worm , my "	74	83
"to my thought as food to life , or as sweet-season'd s"	75	10
"ur name from henc immort life shall have , though i , "	81	42
" , when other would give life , and bring a tomb . the"	83	108
"a tomb . there live more life in on of your fair ey th"	83	118
"yself awai , for term of life thou art assur mine ; an"	92	13
:		

Since the words are normalized, the contexts may not be easy to read. To view the contexts using the original text data, specify the source text using the 'Source' option.

```
T = context(documentsNormalized, "life", 'Source', sonnets)
```

T=23×3 table

Context	Document	Word
"um'st thy self in single life? Ah! if thou issueless s"	9	18
": So should the lines of life that life repair, Which "	16	73



"d the lines of life that life repair, Which this, Time"	16	75
" a tomb Which hides your life, and shows not half your"	17	34
"ves this, and this gives life to thee. "	18	128
"assy of love to thee, My life, being made of four, wit"	45	53
"eauty, though my lover's life: His beauty shall in the"	63	100
"n away, To live a second life on second head; Ere beau"	68	59
"t your love even with my life decay; Lest the wise wor"	71	118
" shall carry me away, My life hath in this line some i"	74	18
"st but lost the dregs of life, The prey of worms, my b"	74	83
"o my thoughts as food to life, Or as sweet-season'd sh"	75	10
"name from hence immortal life shall have, Though I, on"	81	42
", When others would give life, and bring a tomb. There"	83	108
"a tomb. There lives more life in one of your fair eyes"	83	118
"hyself away, For term of life thou art assured mine; A"	92	13
:		

## Input Arguments

### **documents — Input documents**

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **word — Word to find**

string scalar | character vector | scalar cell array

Word to find in context, specified as a string scalar, character vector, or scalar cell array containing a character vector.

Data Types: char | string | cell

### **ngram — N-gram to find**

string array | cell array of character vectors

N-gram to find in context, specified as a string array or cell array of character vectors.

ngram has size 1-by-N , where N is the number of words in the n-gram. The value of ngram(j) is the jth word of the n-gram.

The function ignores trailing empty strings in ngram.

Data Types: `string` | `cell`

## **contextLength** — Context length

25 (default) | positive integer

Context length, specified as a positive integer.

## **source** — Source text

string array | cell array of character vectors

Source text, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Source' and a string array or a cell array of character vectors. If the input documents are preprocessed, and you have the source text, then you can use this option to make the output more readable.

The source text must be the same size as documents.

## Output Arguments

### **T** — Table of contexts

table

Table of contexts with these columns:

Context	String containing the queried word or n-gram in context
Document	Numeric index of the document containing the word or n-gram
Word	Numeric indices of the word or n-gram in the document

## See Also

`doc2cell` | `doclength` | `joinWords` | `string` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# corpusLanguage

Detect language of text

## Syntax

```
language = corpusLanguage(str)
```

## Description

Use `corpusLanguage` to detect language of text.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`language = corpusLanguage(str)` detects the language of the text in `str`.

## Examples

### Detect Language of Text

Detect the language of a string array of text.

```
str = [  
    "恋の悩みで 苦しむ。"  
    "空の星が輝きを増している。"];  
language = corpusLanguage(str)  
  
language =  
'ja'
```

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Example: ["An example of a short sentence."; "A second short sentence."]

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Output Arguments

### Language — Detected language

'en' | 'ja' | 'de' | 'ko'

Detected language, returned as one of the following:

- 'en' - Detected English text
- 'ja' - Detected Japanese text
- 'de' - Detected German text
- 'ko' - Detected Korean text

## See Also

`abbreviations` | `addLanguageDetails` | `addLemmaDetails` | `addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `splitSentences` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument` | `topLevelDomains`

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)

[“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”](#)

[“Language Considerations”](#)

[“Japanese Language Support”](#)

[“German Language Support”](#)

### Introduced in R2018b

# decodeHTMLEntities

Convert HTML and XML entities into characters

## Syntax

```
newStr = decodeHTMLEntities(str)
```

## Description

`newStr = decodeHTMLEntities(str)` replaces HTML and XML character entities and numeric character references in the elements of `str` with their Unicode equivalent.

## Examples

### Replace HTML Entities with Unicode

Replace HTML character entities with their Unicode equivalent.

```
str = ["&lt;&gt;" "R&D"];  
newStr = decodeHTMLEntities(str)
```

```
newStr = 1x2 string array  
    "<>"    "R&D"
```

Replace HTML numeric character references with their Unicode equivalent. Unicode character with hex code `&#x20` is a space.

```
str = "R&#x20;D";  
newStr = decodeHTMLEntities(str)
```

```
newStr =  
"R D"
```

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Example: ["An example of a short sentence."; "A second short sentence."]

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Output text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Output text, returned as a string array, a character vector, or cell array of character vectors. `str` and `newStr` have the same data type.

## See Also

`erasePunctuation` | `eraseTags` | `eraseURLs` | `lower` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# doclength

Length of documents in document array

## Syntax

```
N = doclength(documents)
```

## Description

`N = doclength(documents)` returns the number of tokens in each document in `documents`.

## Examples

### Find Number of Words in Documents

Find the number of words in an array of tokenized documents. Erase the punctuation characters so they do not get counted as words.

```
str = [ ...  
    "An example of a short sentence."  
    "A second short sentence."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)  
  
documents =  
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    7 tokens: An example of a short sentence .  
    5 tokens: A second short sentence .  
  
documents = erasePunctuation(documents)  
  
documents =  
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
6 tokens: An example of a short sentence
4 tokens: A second short sentence
```

```
N = doclength(documents)
```

```
N = 2×1
```

```
6
4
```

## Input Arguments

**documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Output Arguments

**N** — Document lengths

vector of nonnegative integers

Document lengths, returned as a vector of nonnegative integers. The size of N is the same as the size of documents.

## See Also

context | doc2cell | joinWords | string | tokenizedDocument

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**



# doc2cell

Convert documents to cell array of string vectors

## Syntax

```
C = doc2cell(documents)
```

## Description

`C = doc2cell(documents)` converts a `tokenizedDocument` array to a cell array. The entries of `C` are string arrays containing the corresponding words in each document.

## Examples

### Convert Document Array to Cell Array

Convert a `tokenizedDocument` array to a cell array of string vectors.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...  
    "an example of a short sentence" ...  
    "a second short sentence"])  
  
documents =  
    1x2 tokenizedDocument:  
  
        6 tokens: an example of a short sentence  
        4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

```
C = doc2cell(documents)
```

```
C=1x2 cell  
    {1x6 string}    {1x4 string}
```

View the first element of the cell array.

```
C{1}
```

```
ans = 1x6 string array  
    "an"    "example"    "of"    "a"    "short"    "sentence"
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Output Arguments

### **C** — Output cell array

cell array of string vectors

Output cell array of string vectors. Each element of C is a string vector containing the words of the corresponding document.

## See Also

[context](#) | [doclength](#) | [joinWords](#) | [string](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# doc2sequence

Convert documents to sequences for deep learning

## Syntax

```
sequences = doc2sequence(enc,documents)
sequences = doc2sequence(emb,documents)
sequences = doc2sequence( ____,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`sequences = doc2sequence(enc,documents)` returns a cell array of the numeric indices of the words in `documents` given by the word encoding `enc`. Each element of `sequences` is a vector of the indices of the words in the corresponding document.

`sequences = doc2sequence(emb,documents)` returns a cell array of the embedding vectors of the words in `documents` given by the word embedding `emb`. Each element of `sequences` is a matrix of the embedding vectors of the words in the corresponding document.

`sequences = doc2sequence( ____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Examples

### Convert Documents to Sequences of Word Indices

Load the weather reports data and create a `tokenizedDocument` array.

```
filename = "weatherReports.csv";
data = readtable(filename,'TextType','string');
textData = data.event_narrative;
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a word encoding.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents);
```

Convert the documents to sequences of word indices.

```
sequences = doc2sequence(enc, documents);
```

View the sizes of the first 10 sequences. Each sequence is a 1-by- $S$  vector, where  $S$  is the number of word indices in the sequence. Because the sequences are padded,  $S$  is constant.

```
sequences(1:10)
```

```
ans=10×1 cell
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
    {1×930 double}
```

## Convert Documents to Sequences of Word Vectors

Convert an array of tokenized documents to sequences of word vectors using a pretrained word embedding.

Load a pretrained word embedding using the `fastTextWordEmbedding` function. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Load the weather reports data and create a `tokenizedDocument` array.

```
filename = "weatherReports.csv";
data = readtable(filename, 'TextType', 'string');
```

```
textData = data.event_narrative;
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Convert the documents to sequences of word vectors using `doc2sequence`. The `doc2sequence` function, by default, left-pads the sequences to have the same length. When converting large collections of documents using a high-dimensional word embedding, padding can require large amounts of memory. To prevent the function from padding the data, set the `'PaddingDirection'` option to `'none'`. Alternatively, you can control the amount of padding using the `'Length'` option.

```
sequences = doc2sequence(emb,documents, 'PaddingDirection', 'none');
```

View the sizes of the first 10 sequences. Each sequence is  $D$ -by- $S$  matrix, where  $D$  is the embedding dimension, and  $S$  is the number of word vectors in the sequence.

```
sequences(1:10)

ans = 10x1 cell array
    {300x8  single}
    {300x39 single}
    {300x14 single}
    {300x14 single}
    {300x0  single}
    {300x15 single}
    {300x20 single}
    {300x6  single}
    {300x21 single}
    {300x10 single}
```

## Pad or Truncate Sequences to Specified Length

Convert a collection of documents to sequences of word vectors using a pretrained word embedding, and pad or truncate the sequences to a specified length.

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Load the weather reports data and create a `tokenizedDocument` array.

```
filename = "weatherReports.csv";  
data = readtable(filename, 'TextType', 'string');  
textData = data.event_narrative;  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Convert the documents to sequences of word vectors. Specify to left-pad or truncate the sequences to have length 100.

```
sequences = doc2sequence(emb, documents, 'Length', 100);
```

View the sizes of the first 10 sequences. Each sequence is  $D$ -by- $S$  matrix, where  $D$  is the embedding dimension, and  $S$  is the number of word vectors in the sequence (the sequence length). Because the sequence length is specified,  $S$  is constant.

```
sequences(1:10)  
  
ans = 10x1 cell array  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}  
    {300x100 single}
```

## Input Arguments

### **emb** — Input word embedding

`wordEmbedding` object

Input word embedding, specified as a `wordEmbedding` object.

### **enc** — Input word encoding

`wordEncoding` object

Input word encoding, specified as a `wordEncoding` object.

**documents — Input documents**`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

**Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'Length', 'shortest'` truncates the sequences to have the same length as the shortest sequence.

**UnknownWord — Unknown word behavior**`'discard'` (default) | `'nan'`

Unknown word behavior, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'UnknownWord'` and one of the following:

- `'discard'` - If a word is not in the input map, then discard it.
- `'nan'` - If a word is not in the input map, then return a NaN value.

---

**Tip** If you are creating sequences for training a deep learning network with a word embedding, use `'discard'`. Do not use sequences with NaN values, because doing so can propagate errors through the network.

---

**PaddingDirection — Padding direction**`'left'` (default) | `'right'` | `'none'`

Padding direction, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'PaddingDirection'` and one of the following:

- `'left'` - Pad sequences on the left.
- `'right'` - Pad sequences on the right.
- `'none'` - Do not pad sequences.

**Tip** When converting large collections of data using a high-dimensional word embedding, padding can require large amounts of memory. To prevent the function from adding too much padding, set the 'PaddingDirection' option to 'none' or set 'Length' to a smaller value.

---

## **PaddingValue — Padding value**

0 (default) | numeric scalar

Padding value, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'PaddingValue' and a numeric scalar. Do not pad sequences with NaN, because doing so can propagate errors through the network.

Data Types: single | double | int8 | int16 | int32 | int64 | uint8 | uint16 | uint32 | uint64

## **Length — Sequence length**

'longest' (default) | 'shortest' | positive integer

Sequence length, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Length' and one of the following:

- 'longest' - Pad sequences to have the same length as the longest sequence.
- 'shortest' - Truncate sequences to have the same length as the shortest sequence.
- Positive integer - Pad or truncate sequences to have the specified length. The function truncates the sequences on the right.

Data Types: single | double | int8 | int16 | int32 | int64 | uint8 | uint16 | uint32 | uint64 | char | string

## **Output Arguments**

### **sequences — Output sequences**

cell array

Output sequences, returned as a cell array.

For word embedding input, the *i*th element of sequences is a matrix of the word vectors corresponding to the *i*th input document.



For word encoding input, the  $i$ th element of `sequences` is a vector of the word encoding indices corresponding to the  $i$ th input document.

## Tips

- When converting large collections of data using a high-dimensional word embedding, padding can require large amounts of memory. To prevent the function from adding too much padding, set the `'PaddingDirection'` option to `'none'` or set `'Length'` to a smaller value.

## See Also

`fastTextWordEmbedding` | `ind2word` | `isVocabularyWord` | `tokenizedDocument` | `trainWordEmbedding` | `vec2word` | `word2ind` | `word2vec` | `wordEmbedding` | `wordEmbeddingLayer` | `wordEncoding`

## Topics

[“Train a Sentiment Classifier”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

**Introduced in R2018b**

## docfun

Apply function to words in documents

### Syntax

```
newDocuments = docfun(func,documents)
newDocuments = docfun(func,documents1,...,documentsN)
```

### Description

`newDocuments = docfun(func,documents)` calls the function specified by the function handle `func` and passes elements of `documents` as a string vector of words.

- If `func` accepts exactly one input argument, then the words of `newDocuments(i)` are the output of `func(string(documents(i)))`.
- If `func` accepts two input arguments, then the words of `newDocuments(i)` are the output of `func(string(documents(i)),details)`, where `details` contains the corresponding token details output by `tokenDetails`.
- If `func` changes the number of words in the document, then `docfun` removes the token details from that document.

`docfun` does not perform the calls to function `func` in a specific order.

`newDocuments = docfun(func,documents1,...,documentsN)` calls the function specified by the function handle `func` and passes elements of `documents1`, ..., `documentsN` as string vectors of words, where  $N$  is the number of inputs to the function `func`. The words of `newDocuments(i)` are the output of `func(string(documents1(i)),...,string(documentsN(i)))`.

Each of `documents1`, ..., `documentsN` must be the same size.

### Examples

## Reverse Words in Documents

Apply reverse to each word in a document array.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"])

documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    4 tokens: a second short sentence

func = @reverse;
newDocuments = docfun(func,documents)

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: na elpmaxe fo a trohs ecnetnes
    4 tokens: a dnoces trohs ecnetnes
```

## Specify Document Function with Multiple Inputs

Tag words by combining the words from one document array with another, using the string function plus.

Create the first tokenizedDocument array. Erase the punctuation and convert the text to lowercase.

```
str = [ ...
    "An example of a short sentence."
    "A second short sentence."];
str = erasePunctuation(str);
str = lower(str);
documents1 = tokenizedDocument(str)

documents1 =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

Create the second `tokenizedDocument` array. The documents have the same number of words as the corresponding documents in `documents1`. The words of `documents2` are POS tags for the corresponding words.

```
documents2 = tokenizedDocument([ ...
    "_det _noun _prep _det _adj _noun"
    "_det _adj _adj _noun"])
```

```
documents2 =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

  6 tokens: _det _noun _prep _det _adj _noun
  4 tokens: _det _adj _adj _noun
```

```
func = @plus;
newDocuments = docfun(func, documents1, documents2)
```

```
newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

  6 tokens: an_det example_noun of_prep a_det short_adj sentence_noun
  4 tokens: a_det second_adj short_adj sentence_noun
```

The output is not the same as calling `plus` on the documents directly.

```
plus(documents1, documents2)
```

```
ans =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

  12 tokens: an example of a short sentence _det _noun _prep _det _adj _noun
  8 tokens: a second short sentence _det _adj _adj _noun
```

## Input Arguments

### **func** — Function handle

function handle

Function handle that accepts  $N$  string arrays as inputs and outputs a string array. `func` must accept `string(documents1(i)), ..., string(documentsN(i))` as input.

Function handle to apply to words in documents. The function must have one of the following syntaxes:

- `newWords = func(words)`, where `words` is a string array of the words of a single document.
- `newWords = func(words, details)`, where `words` is a string array of the words of a single document, and `details` is the corresponding table of token details given by `tokenDetails`.
- `newWords = func(words1, ..., wordsN)`, where `words1, ..., wordsN` are string arrays of words.

Example: `@reverse`

Data Types: `function_handle`

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

tokenizedDocument array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## See Also

`addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `decodeHTMLEntities` | `lower` | `plus` | `regexprep` | `replace` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## **Topics**

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Correct Spelling Using Edit Distance Searchers”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# editDistance

Find edit distance between two strings or documents

## Syntax

```
d = editDistance(str1,str2)
d = editDistance(document1,document2)
d = editDistance( ____,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`d = editDistance(str1,str2)` returns the lowest number of grapheme (Unicode term for human-perceived characters) insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to convert `str1` to `str2`.

`d = editDistance(document1,document2)` returns the lowest number of token insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to convert `document1` to `document2`.

`d = editDistance( ____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Examples

### Edit Distance Between Two Strings

Find the edit distance between the strings "Text analytics" and "Text analysis". The edit distance, by default, is the total number of grapheme insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to change one string to another.

```
str1 = "Text analytics";
str2 = "Text analysis";
```

Find the edit distance.

```
d = editDistance(str1, str2)
```

```
d = 2
```

This means changing the first string to the second requires two edits. For example:

- 1 Substitution - Substitute the character "t" to an "s": "Text analytics" to "Text analysics".
- 2 Deletion - Delete the character "c": "Text analysics" to "Text analysis".

### Edit Distance Between Two Documents

Find the edit distance between two tokenized documents. For tokenized document input, the edit distance, by default, is the total number of token insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to change one document to another.

```
str1 = "It's time for breakfast.";
document1 = tokenizedDocument(str1);
```

```
str2 = "It's now time to sleep.";
document2 = tokenizedDocument(str2);
```

Find the edit distance.

```
d = editDistance(document1, document2)
```

```
d = 3
```

This means changing the first document to the second requires three edits. For example:

- 1 Insertion - Insert the word "now".
- 2 Substitution - Substitute the word "for" with "to".
- 3 Substitution - Substitute the word "breakfast" with "sleep".



## Specify Cost Values

The `editDistance` function, by default, returns the lowest number of grapheme insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to change one string to another. To also include the swap action in the calculation, use the `'SwapCost'` option.

First, find the edit distance between the strings "MATALB" and "MATLAB".

```
str1 = "MATALB";  
str2 = "MATLAB";  
d = editDistance(str1,str2)
```

```
d = 2
```

One possible edit is:

- 1 Substitute the second "A" with "L": ("MATALB" to "MATLLB").
- 2 Substitute the second "L" with "A": ("MATLLB" to "MATLAB").

The default value for the swap cost (the cost of swapping two adjacent graphemes) is `Inf`. This means that swaps do not count towards the edit distance. To include swaps, set the `'SwapCost'` option to 1.

```
d = editDistance(str1,str2,'SwapCost',1)
```

```
d = 1
```

This means there is one action. For example, swap the adjacent characters "A" and "L".

## Specify Custom Cost Function

To compute the edit distance between two words and specify that the edits are case-insensitive, specify a custom substitute cost function.

First, compute the edit distance between the strings "MATLAB" and "MathWorks".

```
d = editDistance("MATLAB","MathWorks")
```

```
d = 8
```

This means changing the first string to the second requires eight edits. For example:

- 1 Substitution - Substitute the character "A" with "a". ("MATLAB" to "MaTLAB")
- 2 Substitution - Substitute the character "T" with "t". ("MaTLAB" to "MatLAB")
- 3 Substitution - Substitute the character "L" with "h". ("MatLAB" to "MathAB")
- 4 Substitution - Substitute the character "A" with "W". ("MathAB" to "MathWB")
- 5 Substitution - Substitute the character "B" with "o". ("MathWB" to "MathWo")
- 6 Insertion - Insert the character "r". ("MathWo" to "MathWor")
- 7 Insertion - Insert the character "k". ("MathWor" to "MathWork")
- 8 Insertion - Insert the character "s". ("MathWork" to "MathWorks")

Compute the edit distance and specify the custom substitution cost function `caseInsensitiveSubstituteCost`, listed at the end of the example. The custom function `caseInsensitiveSubstituteCost` returns 0 if the two inputs are the same or differ only by case and returns 1 otherwise.

```
d = editDistance("MATLAB", "MathWorks", 'SubstituteCost', @caseInsensitiveSubstituteCost)
d = 6
```

This means the total cost for changing the first string to the second is 6. For example:

- 1 Substitution (cost 0) - Substitute the character "A" with "a". ("MATLAB" to "MaTLAB")
- 2 Substitution (cost 0) - Substitute the character "T" with "t". ("MaTLAB" to "MatLAB")
- 3 Substitution (cost 1) - Substitute the character "L" with "h". ("MatLAB" to "MathAB")
- 4 Substitution (cost 1) - Substitute the character "A" with "W". ("MathAB" to "MathWB")
- 5 Substitution (cost 1) - Substitute the character "B" with "o". ("MathWB" to "MathWo")
- 6 Insert (cost 1) - Insert the character "r". ("MathWo" to "MathWor")
- 7 Insert (cost 1) - Insert the character "k". ("MathWor" to "MathWork")
- 8 Insert (cost 1) - Insert the character "s". ("MathWork" to "MathWorks")

### Custom Cost Function

The custom function `caseInsensitiveSubstituteCost` returns 0 if the two inputs are the same or differ only by case and returns 1 otherwise.

```
function cost = caseInsensitiveSubstituteCost(grapheme1,grapheme2)
if lower(grapheme1) == lower(grapheme2)
    cost = 0;
else
    cost = 1;
end
end
```

## Input Arguments

### **str1 — Source string**

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Source string, specified as a string array, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

If `str1` contains multiple strings, then `str2` must be the same size as `str1` or scalar.

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `cell`

### **str2 — Target string**

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Target string, specified as a string array, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

If `str2` contains multiple strings, then `str1` must be the same size as `str2` or scalar.

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `cell`

### **document1 — Source document**

`tokenizedDocument`

Source document, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

If `document1` contains multiple documents, then `document2` must be the same size as `document1` or scalar.

### **document2 — Target document**

`tokenizedDocument`

Target document, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

If `document2` contains multiple documents, then `document1` must be the same size as `document2` or scalar.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `editDistance("MATALB", "MATLAB", 'SwapCost', 1)` returns the edit distance between the strings "MATALB" and "MATLAB" and sets the cost to swap two adjacent graphemes to 1.

### InsertCost — Cost to insert grapheme or token

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to insert a grapheme or token, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'InsertCost' and a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If 'InsertCost' is a function handle, then the function must accept a single input and return the cost of inserting the input to the source. For example:

- For string input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme)`, where the function returns the cost of inserting `grapheme` into `str1`.
- For document input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(token)`, where the function returns the cost of inserting `token` into `document1`.

Example: 'InsertCost', 2

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

### DeleteCost — Cost to delete grapheme or token

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to delete grapheme or token, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'DeleteCost' and a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If 'DeleteCost' is a function handle, then the function must accept a single input and return the cost of deleting the input from the source. For example:

- For string input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme)`, where the function returns the cost of deleting `grapheme` from `str1`.
- For document input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(token)`, where the function returns the cost of deleting `token` from `document1`.

Example: 'DeleteCost',2

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

### **SubstituteCost – Cost to substitute grapheme or token**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to substitute a grapheme or token, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'SubstituteCost' and a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If 'SubstituteCost' is a function handle, then the function must accept exactly two inputs and return the cost of substituting the first input with the second in the source. For example:

- For string input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme1,grapheme2)`, where the function returns the cost of substituting `grapheme1` with `grapheme2` in `str1`.
- For document input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(token1,token2)`, where the function returns the cost of substituting `token1` with `token2` in `document1`.

Example: 'SubstituteCost',2

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

### **SwapCost – Cost to swap two adjacent graphemes or tokens**

Inf (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to swap two adjacent graphemes or tokens, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'SwapCost' and a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If 'SwapCost' is a function handle, then the function must accept exactly two inputs and return the cost of swapping the first input with the second in the source. For example:

- For string input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme1, grapheme2)`, where the function returns the cost of swapping the adjacent graphemes `grapheme1` and `grapheme2` in `str1`.
- For document input to `editDistance`, the cost function must have the form `cost = func(token1, token2)`, where the function returns the cost of swapping the adjacent tokens `token1` and `token2` in `document1`.

Example: 'SwapCost', 2

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

## Output Arguments

### **d** — Edit distance

nonnegative scalar

Edit distance, returned as a nonnegative scalar.

## Algorithms

### Edit Distance

The function, by default, uses the Levenshtein distance: the lowest number of insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to convert one string to another.

For other commonly used edit distances, use these options:

Distance	Description	Options
Levenshtein (default)	lowest number of insertions, deletions, and substitutions	Default
Damerau-Levenshtein	lowest number of insertions, deletions, substitutions, and swaps	'SwapCost', 1

Distance	Description	Options
Hamming	lowest number of substitutions only	'InsertCost', Inf, 'DeleteCost', Inf

## See Also

[editDistanceSearcher](#) | [knnsearch](#) | [rangearch](#) | [splitGraphemes](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

[“Correct Spelling Using Edit Distance Searchers”](#)  
[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)  
[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)  
[“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”](#)

**Introduced in R2019a**

# editDistanceSearcher

Edit distance nearest neighbor searcher

## Description

An edit distance searcher performs a nearest neighborhood search in a list of known strings, using edit distance.

## Creation

## Syntax

```
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,maxDist)
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,maxDist,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,maxDist)` creates an edit distance searcher and sets the `Vocabulary` and `MaximumDistance` properties. The returned object searches the words in `vocabulary` and with maximum edit distance `maxDist`.

`eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,maxDist,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Properties

### Vocabulary — Words to compare against

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Words to compare against, specified as a string vector, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

Data Types: char | string | cell



**MaximumDistance — Maximum edit distance**

positive scalar

Maximum edit distance, specified as a positive scalar.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

**InsertCost — Cost to insert grapheme**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to insert grapheme, specified as a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If `InsertCost` is a function handle, then the function must accept a single input and return the cost of inserting the input to the source. The cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme)`, where the function returns the cost of inserting `grapheme` into the source string.

If you specify a custom cost function, then the searcher perform exhaustive searching. For large vocabularies, the functions `knnsearch` and `rangearch` can take a long time to find matches.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

**DeleteCost — Cost to delete grapheme**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to delete grapheme, specified as a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If `DeleteCost` is a function handle, then the function must accept a single input and return the cost of deleting the input from the source. The cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme)`, where the function returns the cost of deleting `grapheme` from the source string.

If you specify a custom cost function, then the searcher perform exhaustive searching. For large vocabularies, the functions `knnsearch` and `rangearch` can take a long time to find matches.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

**SubstituteCost — Cost to substitute grapheme**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to substitute grapheme, specified as a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If `SubstituteCost` is a function handle, then the function must accept exactly two inputs and return the cost of substituting the first input to the second in the source. The cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme1, grapheme2)`, where the function returns the cost of substituting `grapheme1` with `grapheme2` in the source.

If you specify a custom cost function, then the searcher perform exhaustive searching. For large vocabularies, the functions `knnsearch` and `rangearch` can take a long time to find matches.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

## **SwapCost — Cost to swap adjacent graphemes**

`Inf` (default) | nonnegative scalar | function handle

Cost to swap adjacent graphemes, specified as a nonnegative scalar or a function handle.

If `SwapCost` is a function handle, then the function must accept exactly two inputs and return the cost of swapping the first input with the second in the source. The cost function must have the form `cost = func(grapheme1, grapheme2)`, where the function returns the cost of swapping the adjacent graphemes `grapheme1` and `grapheme2` in the source.

If you specify a custom cost function, then the searcher perform exhaustive searching. For large vocabularies, the functions `knnsearch` and `rangearch` can take a long time to find matches.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `function_handle`

## **Object Functions**

`rangearch` Find nearest neighbors by edit distance range

`knnsearch` Find nearest neighbors by edit distance

## **Examples**

## Create Edit Distance Searcher

Create an edit distance searcher with a maximum edit distance 3 from the words "MathWorks", "MATLAB", and "Analytics".

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Analytics"];
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,3)

eds =
    editDistanceSearcher with properties:
        Vocabulary: ["MathWorks"    "MATLAB"    "Analytics"]
        MaximumDistance: 3
        InsertCost: 1
        DeleteCost: 1
        SubstituteCost: 1
        SwapCost: Inf
```

## Create Damerau-Levenshtein Edit Distance Searcher

Create an edit distance searcher using the Damerau-Levenshtein edit distance. The Damerau-Levenshtein edit distance is the lowest number of insertions, deletions, substitutions, and swaps.

Create the edit distance searcher from the words "MathWorks", "MATLAB", and "Analytics" and specify a maximum distance of 3. To specify the Damerau-Levenshtein edit distance, set 'SwapCost' to 1.

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Analytics"];
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,3,'SwapCost',1)

eds =
    editDistanceSearcher with properties:
        Vocabulary: ["MathWorks"    "MATLAB"    "Analytics"]
        MaximumDistance: 3
        InsertCost: 1
        DeleteCost: 1
        SubstituteCost: 1
        SwapCost: 1
```

## Find Nearest Words

Create an edit distance searcher.

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Simulink"];  
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,2);
```

Find the nearest words to "MALTAB" and "MatWorks".

```
words = ["MALTAB" "MatWorks"];  
idx = knnsearch(eds,words)
```

```
idx = 2×1
```

```
2  
1
```

Get the words from the vocabulary using the returned indices.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx)
```

```
nearestWords = 1×2 string array  
"MATLAB" "MathWorks"
```

## Find Nearest Neighbors in Range

Create an edit distance searcher and specify a maximum edit distance of 3.

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Simulink" "text" "analytics" "analysis"];  
maxDist = 3;  
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,maxDist);
```

Find the nearest words to "MALTAB" and "MatWorks" with edit distance less than or equal to 1.

```
words = ["MALTAB" "MatWorks" "analytcs"];  
maxDist = 1;  
idx = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)
```

```
idx=3x1 cell
    {1x0 double}
    {[      1]}
    {[      5]}
```

For "MALTAB", there are no words in the searcher within the specified range. For "MatWorks" and "analytics", there is one result. View the corresponding word for "MatWorks" using the returned index.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx{2})

nearestWords =
    "MathWorks"
```

Find the nearest words to "MALTAB", "MatWorks", and "analytcs" with edit distance less than or equal to 3 and their corresponding edit distances.

```
words = ["MALTAB" "MatWorks" "analytcs"];
maxDist = 3;
[idx,d] = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)

idx=3x1 cell
    {[      2]}
    {[      1]}
    {1x2 double}
```

```
d=3x1 cell
    {[      2]}
    {[      1]}
    {1x2 double}
```

For both "MALTAB" and "MatWorks", there is one word in the searcher within the specified range. For "analytcs", there are two results. View the corresponding words for "analytcs" using the returned indices and their edit distances.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx{3})

nearestWords = 1x2 string array
    "analytics"    "analysis"
```

```
d{3}
```

```
ans = 1x2
      1     2
```

## Algorithms

### Edit Distance

The function, by default, uses the Levenshtein distance: the lowest number of insertions, deletions, and substitutions required to convert one string to another.

For other commonly used edit distances, use these options:

Distance	Description	Options
Levenshtein (default)	lowest number of insertions, deletions, and substitutions	Default
Damerau-Levenshtein	lowest number of insertions, deletions, substitutions, and swaps	'SwapCost', 1
Hamming	lowest number of substitutions only	'InsertCost', Inf, 'DeleteCost', Inf

### See Also

[editDistance](#) | [knnsearch](#) | [rangesearch](#) | [splitGraphemes](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

### Topics

“Correct Spelling Using Edit Distance Searchers”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

**Introduced in R2019a**

# encode

Encode documents as matrix of word or n-gram counts

## Syntax

```
counts = encode(bag, documents)
counts = encode(bag, words)
counts = encode( ____, Name, Value)
```

## Description

Use `encode` to encode an array of tokenized documents as a matrix of word or n-gram counts according to a bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model. To encode documents as vectors or word indices, use a `wordEncoding` object.

`counts = encode(bag, documents)` returns a matrix of frequency counts for documents based on the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`counts = encode(bag, words)` returns a matrix of frequency counts for a list of words.

`counts = encode( ____, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Examples

### Encode Documents as Word Count Matrix

Encode an array of documents as a matrix of word counts.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

    Counts: [2x7 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x7 string]
    NumWords: 7
    NumDocuments: 2

documents = tokenizedDocument([
  "a new sentence"
  "a second new sentence"])

documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    3 tokens: a new sentence
    4 tokens: a second new sentence
```

View the documents encoded as a matrix of word counts. The word "new" does not appear in `bag`, so it is not counted.

```
counts = encode(bag,documents);
full(counts)

ans = 2x7

    0    0    0    1    0    1    0
    0    0    0    1    0    1    1
```

The columns correspond to the vocabulary of the bag-of-words model.

`bag.Vocabulary`

```
ans = 1x7 string array
    "an"    "example"    "of"    "a"    "short"    "sentence"    "second"
```

## Encode Words as Word Count Vector

Encode an array of words as a vector of word counts.



```

documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
    bagOfWords with properties:

        Counts: [2x7 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x7 string]
        NumWords: 7
        NumDocuments: 2

words = ["another" "example" "of" "a" "short" "example" "sentence"];
counts = encode(bag,words)

counts =
    (1,2)      2
    (1,3)      1
    (1,4)      1
    (1,5)      1
    (1,6)      1

```

## Output Document Word Counts in Columns

Encode an array of documents as a matrix of word counts with documents in columns.

```

documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
    bagOfWords with properties:

        Counts: [2x7 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x7 string]
        NumWords: 7
        NumDocuments: 2

```

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "a new sentence"
    "a second new sentence"])

documents =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    3 tokens: a new sentence
    4 tokens: a second new sentence
```

View the documents encoded as a matrix of word counts with documents in columns. The word "new" does not appear in `bag`, so it is not counted.

```
counts = encode(bag,documents,'DocumentsIn','columns');
full(counts)
```

```
ans = 7x2
```

```
0    0
0    0
0    0
1    1
0    0
1    1
0    1
```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object.

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If `documents` is a string array or a cell array of character

vectors, then it must be a row vector representing a single document, where each element is a word.

---

**Tip** To ensure that the documents are encoded correctly, you must preprocess the input documents using the same steps as the documents used to create the input model. For an example showing how to create a function to preprocess text data, see “Prepare Text Data for Analysis”.

---

### words — Input words

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify `words` as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'DocumentsIn', 'rows'` specifies the orientation of the output documents as rows.

### DocumentsIn — Orientation of output documents

`'rows'` (default) | `'columns'`

Orientation of output documents in the frequency count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DocumentsIn'` and one of the following:

- `'rows'` - Return a matrix of frequency counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- `'columns'` - Return a transposed matrix of frequency counts with columns corresponding to documents.

Data Types: `char`

### ForceCellOutput — Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array

`false` (default) | `true`

Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array, specified as the comma separated pair consisting of 'ForceCellOutput' and true or false.

Data Types: `logical`

## Output Arguments

### **counts** — Word or n-gram counts

sparse matrix | cell array of sparse matrices

Word or n-gram counts, returned as a sparse matrix of nonnegative integers or a cell array of sparse matrices.

If `bag` is a non-scalar array or 'ForceCellOutput' is true, then the function returns the outputs as a cell array of sparse matrices. Each element in the cell array is matrix of word or n-gram counts of the corresponding element of `bag`.

## See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `tfidf` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)

[“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”](#)

[“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”](#)

[“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

**Introduced in R2017b**

# erasePunctuation

Erase punctuation from text and documents

## Syntax

```
newStr = erasePunctuation(str)
newDocuments = erasePunctuation(documents)
newDocuments = erasePunctuation(documents, 'TokenTypes', types)
```

## Description

`newStr = erasePunctuation(str)` erases punctuation and symbols from the elements of `str`. The function removes characters that belong to the Unicode punctuation or symbol classes.

`newDocuments = erasePunctuation(documents)` erases punctuation and symbols from documents. If a word is empty after removing punctuation and symbol characters, then the function removes it. For tokenized document input, the function erases punctuation from tokens with type 'punctuation' and 'other'. For example, the function does not erase punctuation and symbol characters from URLs and email addresses.

`newDocuments = erasePunctuation(documents, 'TokenTypes', types)` erases punctuation and symbols from only the specified token types.

## Examples

### Erase Punctuation from Text

Erase the punctuation from the text in `str`.

```
str = "it's one and/or two.";
newStr = erasePunctuation(str)
```

```
newStr =  
"its one andor two"
```

To insert a space where the "/" symbol is, first use the `replace` function.

```
newStr = replace(str, "/", " ")
```

```
newStr =  
"it's one and or two."
```

```
newStr = erasePunctuation(newStr)
```

```
newStr =  
"its one and or two"
```

## Erase Punctuation from Documents

Erase the punctuation from an array of documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...  
    "An example of a short sentence."  
    "Another example... with a URL: https://www.mathworks.com"]])
```

```
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    7 tokens: An example of a short sentence .  
   10 tokens: Another example . . . with a URL : https://www.mathworks.com
```

```
newDocuments = erasePunctuation(documents)
```

```
newDocuments =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: An example of a short sentence  
    6 tokens: Another example with a URL https://www.mathworks.com
```

Here, the function does not erase the punctuation symbols from the URL.

## Input Arguments

### **str** – Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Example: ["An example of a short sentence."; "A second short sentence."]

Data Types: string | char | cell

### **documents** – Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **types** – Token types to erase punctuation from

{'punctuation', 'other'} (default) | string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Token types to erase punctuation from, specified as a character vector, string array, or a cell array of character vectors containing one or more token types (including custom token types).

The tokenizedDocument and addTypeDetails functions automatically detect the following token types:

- 'letters' - string of letter characters only
- 'digits' - string of digits only
- 'punctuation' - string of punctuation and symbol characters only
- 'email-address' - detected email address
- 'web-address' - detected web address
- 'hashtag' - detected hashtag (starts with "#" character followed by a letter)
- 'at-mention' - detected at-mention (starts with "@" character)
- 'emoticon' - detected emoticon
- 'emoji' - detected emoji
- 'other' - does not belong to the previous types and is not a custom type

To specify your own custom token types when tokenizing, use the 'CustomTokens' or 'RegularExpressions' options in `tokenizedDocument`. If you do not specify a type for a custom token, then the software sets the corresponding token type to 'custom'.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Output text

`string` array | `character` vector | `cell` array of `character` vectors

Output text, returned as a `string` array, a `character` vector, or `cell` array of `character` vectors. `str` and `newStr` have the same data type.

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## More About

### Unicode Character Categories

Each Unicode character is assigned a category. The following table summarizes the Unicode punctuation and symbol categories and provides an example character from each category:

Category	Category Code	Number of Characters	Example Character
Punctuation, Connector	[Pc]	10	–
Punctuation, Dash	[Pd]	24	-
Punctuation, Close	[Pe]	73	)
Punctuation, Final quote	[Pf]	10	”



Category	Category Code	Number of Characters	Example Character
Punctuation, Initial quote	[Pi]	12	“
Punctuation, Other	[Po]	566	!
Punctuation, Open	[Ps]	75	(
Symbol, Currency	[Sc]	54	\$
Symbol, Modifier	[Sk]	121	^
Symbol, Math	[Sm]	948	+
Symbol, Other	[So]	5855	¡

For more information, see [1].

## Tips

- For string input, `erasePunctuation` removes punctuation characters from URLs and HTML tags. This behavior can prevent the functions `eraseTags`, `eraseURLs`, and `decodeHTMLEntities` from working as expected. If you want to use these functions to preprocess your text, then use these functions before using `erasePunctuation`.

## Compatibility Considerations

### **erasePunctuation skips complex tokens**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, for `tokenizedDocument` input, `erasePunctuation`, by default, erases punctuation and symbol characters from tokens with type `'punctuation'` or `'other'` only. This behavior prevents the function from affecting complex tokens such as URLs and email-addresses.

In previous versions, `erasePunctuation` erases punctuation characters from all tokens. To reproduce the behavior, use the `'TokenTypes'` name-value pair.

## References

[1] *Unicode Character Categories*. <https://www.fileformat.info/info/unicode/category/index.htm>

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `eraseTags` | `eraseURLs` | `lower` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# eraseTags

Erase HTML and XML tags from text

## Syntax

```
newStr = eraseTags(str)
```

## Description

`newStr = eraseTags(str)` erases HTML and XML comments and tags from the elements of `str`.

The function erases comments and tags with tag name `a`, `abbr`, `acronym`, `b`, `bdi`, `bdo`, `big`, `code`, `del`, `dfn`, `em`, `font`, `i`, `ins`, `kbd`, `mark`, `rp`, `rt`, `ruby`, `s`, `small`, `span`, `strike`, `strong`, `sub`, `sup`, `tt`, `u`, `var` and `wbr`, and replaces all other tags with a space.

The function does not remove HTML and XML elements (the tags as well anything between start and end tags). For example, `eraseTags("x<a>y</a>")` returns the string "xy". It only removes the tags `<a>` and `</a>`, and does not remove the element `<a>y</a>`.

## Examples

### Erase HTML and XML Tags and Comments

Erase the tags from some HTML code. The function replaces the `<br>` tag with a space.

```
htmlCode = "one.<br>two";  
newStr = eraseTags(htmlCode)  
  
newStr =  
"one. two"
```

Erase the tags from some XML code. The function removes the `<sub>` tags and does not replace them with a space.

```
xmlCode = "H<sub>2</sub>O";  
newStr = eraseTags(xmlCode)  
  
newStr =  
"H2O"
```

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Example: ["An example of a short sentence."; "A second short sentence."]

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Output text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Output text, returned as a string array, a character vector, or cell array of character vectors. `str` and `newStr` have the same data type.

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `erasePunctuation` | `eraseURLs` | `lower` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# eraseURLs

Erase HTTP and HTTPS URLs from text

## Syntax

```
newStr = eraseURLs(str)
```

## Description

`newStr = eraseURLs(str)` erases HTTP and HTTPS URLs from the elements of `str`.

## Examples

### Erase URL from Text

Erase the URL from the text in `str`.

```
str = "For more information, see https://www.mathworks.com";  
newStr = eraseURLs(str)
```

```
newStr =  
"For more information, see "
```

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Example: ["An example of a short sentence."; "A second short sentence."]

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Output text

`string array` | `character vector` | `cell array of character vectors`

Output text, returned as a string array, a character vector, or cell array of character vectors. `str` and `newStr` have the same data type.

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `erasePunctuation` | `eraseTags` | `lower` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# extractFileText

Read text from PDF, Microsoft Word, HTML, and plain text files

## Syntax

```
str = extractFileText(filename)
str = extractFileText(filename,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`str = extractFileText(filename)` reads the text data from a file as a string.

`str = extractFileText(filename,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Examples

### Extract Text Data from Text File

Extract the text from `sonnets.txt` using `extractFileText`. The file `sonnets.txt` contains Shakespeare's sonnets in plain text.

```
str = extractFileText("sonnets.txt");
```

View the first sonnet.

```
i = strfind(str,"I");
ii = strfind(str,"II");
start = i(1);
fin = ii(1);
extractBetween(str,start,fin-1)
```

```
ans =
    "I"
```

```
From fairest creatures we desire increase,  
That thereby beauty's rose might never die,  
But as the ripener should by time decease,  
His tender heir might bear his memory:  
But thou, contracted to thine own bright eyes,  
Feed'st thy light's flame with self-substantial fuel,  
Making a famine where abundance lies,  
Thy self thy foe, to thy sweet self too cruel:  
Thou that art now the world's fresh ornament,  
And only herald to the gaudy spring,  
Within thine own bud buriest thy content,  
And tender churl mak'st waste in niggarding:  
Pity the world, or else this glutton be,  
To eat the world's due, by the grave and thee.
```

"

## Extract Text Data from PDF

Extract the text from `exampleSonnets.pdf` using `extractFileText`. The file `exampleSonnets.pdf` contains Shakespeare's sonnets in a PDF file.

```
str = extractFileText("exampleSonnets.pdf");
```

View the second sonnet.

```
ii = strfind(str,"II");  
iii = strfind(str,"III");  
start = ii(1);  
fin = iii(1);  
extractBetween(str,start,fin-1)
```

```
ans =  
"II
```

```
When forty winters shall besiege thy brow,  
And dig deep trenches in thy beauty's field,  
Thy youth's proud livery so gazed on now,  
Will be a tatter'd weed of small worth held:  
Then being asked, where all thy beauty lies,  
Where all the treasure of thy lusty days;
```



To say, within thine own deep sunken eyes,  
 Were an all-eating shame, and thriftless praise.  
 How much more praise deserv'd thy beauty's use,  
 If thou couldst answer 'This fair child of mine  
 Shall sum my count, and make my old excuse,'  
 Proving his beauty by succession thine!  
     This were to be new made when thou art old,  
     And see thy blood warm when thou feel'st it cold.

"

Extract the text from pages 3, 5, and 7 of the PDF file.

```
pages = [3 5 7];
str = extractFileText("exampleSonnets.pdf", ...
    'Pages', pages);
```

View the 10th sonnet.

```
x = strfind(str, "X");
xi = strfind(str, "XI");
start = x(1);
fin = xi(1);
extractBetween(str, start, fin-1)
```

```
ans =
    "X"
```

Is it for fear to wet a widow's eye,  
 That thou consum'st thy self in single life?  
 Ah! if thou issueless shalt hap to die,  
 The world will wail thee like a makeless wife;  
 The world will be thy widow and still weep  
 That thou no form of thee hast left behind,  
 When every private widow well may keep  
 By children's eyes, her husband's shape in mind:  
 Look! what an unthrift in the world doth spend  
 Shifts but his place, for still the world enjoys it;  
 But beauty's waste hath in the world an end,  
 And kept unused the user so destroys it.  
     No love toward others in that bosom sits  
     That on himself such murd'rous shame commits.

X

```
For shame! deny that thou bear'st love to any,  
Who for thy self art so unprovident.  
Grant, if thou wilt, thou art belov'd of many,  
But that thou none lov'st is most evident:  
For thou art so possess'd with murderous hate,  
That 'gainst thy self thou stick'st not to conspire,  
Seeking that beauteous roof to ruinate  
Which to repair should be thy chief desire.
```

"

## Import Text from Multiple Files Using a File Datastore

If your text data is contained in multiple files in a folder, then you can import the text data into MATLAB using a file datastore.

Create a file datastore for the example sonnet text files. The examples sonnets have file names "exampleSonnetN.txt", where N is the number of the sonnet. Specify the read function to be `extractFileText`.

```
readFcn = @extractFileText;  
fds = fileDatastore('exampleSonnet*.txt', 'ReadFcn', readFcn)
```

```
fds =
```

```
FileDatastore with properties:
```

```
Files: {  
    ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa  
    ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa  
    ' ...\ibF7BE2B\29\tp452a0655\textanalytics-ex73762432\exa  
    ... and 1 more  
}  
UniformRead: 0  
ReadMode: 'file'  
BlockSize: Inf  
PreviewFcn: @extractFileText  
ReadFcn: @extractFileText  
AlternateFileSystemRoots: {}
```

Create an empty bag-of-words model.

```

bag = bagOfWords

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

    Counts: []
    Vocabulary: [1x0 string]
    NumWords: 0
    NumDocuments: 0

```

Loop over the files in the datastore and read each file. Tokenize the text in each file and add the document to `bag`.

```

while hasdata(fds)
    str = read(fds);
    document = tokenizedDocument(str);
    bag = addDocument(bag,document);
end

```

View the updated bag-of-words model.

```

bag

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

    Counts: [4x276 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x276 string]
    NumWords: 276
    NumDocuments: 4

```

### Extract Text from HTML

To extract text data directly from HTML code, use `extractHTMLText` and specify the HTML code as a string.

```

code = "<html><body><h1>THE SONNETS</h1><p>by William Shakespeare</p></body></html>";
str = extractHTMLText(code)

str =
    "THE SONNETS

```

by William Shakespeare"

## Input Arguments

### **filename** — Name of file

string scalar | character vector

Name of the file, specified as a string scalar or character vector.

Data Types: string | char

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'Pages', [1 3 5]` specifies to read pages 1, 3, and 5 from a PDF file.

### **Encoding** — Character encoding

'auto' (default) | 'UTF-8' | 'ISO-8859-1' | 'windows-1251' | 'windows-1252' | ...

Character encoding to use, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Encoding' and a character vector or a string scalar. The character vector or string scalar must contain a standard character encoding scheme name such as the following.

'Big5'	'ISO-8859-1'	'windows-874'
'Big5-HKSCS'	'ISO-8859-2'	'windows-949'
'CP949'	'ISO-8859-3'	'windows-1250'
'EUC-KR'	'ISO-8859-4'	'windows-1251'
'EUC-JP'	'ISO-8859-5'	'windows-1252'
'EUC-TW'	'ISO-8859-6'	'windows-1253'
'GB18030'	'ISO-8859-7'	'windows-1254'
'GB2312'	'ISO-8859-8'	'windows-1255'

'GBK'	'ISO-8859-9'	'windows-1256'
'IBM866'	'ISO-8859-11'	'windows-1257'
'KOI8-R'	'ISO-8859-13'	'windows-1258'
'KOI8-U'	'ISO-8859-15'	'US-ASCII'
	'Macintosh'	'UTF-8'
	'Shift_JIS'	

If you do not specify an encoding scheme, then the function performs heuristic auto-detection for the encoding to use. If these heuristics fail, then you must specify one explicitly.

This option only applies when the input is a plain text file.

Data Types: char | string

#### **ExtractionMethod — Extraction method**

'tree' (default) | 'article' | 'all-text'

Extraction method, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'ExtractionMethod' and one of the following:

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
'tree'	Analyze the DOM tree and text contents, then extract a block of paragraphs.
'article'	Detect article text and extract a block of paragraphs.
'all-text'	Extract all text in the HTML body, except for scripts and CSS styles.

#### **Password — Password to open PDF file**

character vector | string scalar

Password to open PDF file, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Password' and a character vector or a string scalar. This option only applies if the input file is a PDF.

Example: 'Password', 'skrowhtaM'

Data Types: char | string

## **Pages — Pages to read from PDF file**

vector of positive integers

Pages to read from PDF file, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Pages' and a vector of positive integers. This option only applies if the input file is a PDF file. The function, by default, reads all pages from the PDF file.

Example: 'Pages', [1 3 5]

Data Types: single | double | int8 | int16 | int32 | int64 | uint8 | uint16 | uint32 | uint64

## **Tips**

- To read text directly from HTML code, use `extractHTMLText`.

## **See Also**

`extractHTMLText` | `readPDFFormData` | `tokenizedDocument` | `writeTextDocument`

## **Topics**

“Extract Text Data from Files”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# extractHTMLText

Extract text from HTML

## Syntax

```
str = extractHTMLText(code)
str = extractHTMLText(tree)
str = extractHTMLText( ____, 'ExtractionMethod', ex)
```

## Description

`str = extractHTMLText(code)` parses the HTML code in `code` and extracts the text.

`str = extractHTMLText(tree)` extracts the text from an HTML tree.

`str = extractHTMLText( ____, 'ExtractionMethod', ex)` also specifies the extraction method to use.

## Examples

### Extract Text from HTML

To extract text data directly from HTML code, use `extractHTMLText` and specify the HTML code as a string.

```
code = "<html><body><h1>THE SONNETS</h1><p>by William Shakespeare</p></body></html>";
str = extractHTMLText(code)

str =
    "THE SONNETS
    by William Shakespeare"
```

### Extract Text from Website

To extract the text data from a web page, first use the `webread` function to read the HTML code. Then use the `extractHTMLText` function on the returned code.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";  
code = webread(url);  
str = extractHTMLText(code)
```

```
str =  
    'Text Analytics Toolbox™ provides algorithms and visualizations for preprocessing,  
    Text Analytics Toolbox includes tools for processing raw text from sources such as  
    Using machine learning techniques such as LSA, LDA, and word embeddings, you can t
```

### Find Elements in HTML Tree

Read HTML code from the URL `https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics` using the `webread` function.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";  
code = webread(url);
```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```
tree = htmlTree(code);
```

Find all the hyperlinks in the HTML tree using `findElement`. The hyperlinks are nodes with element name "A".

```
selector = "A";  
subtrees = findElement(tree,selector);
```

View the first few subtrees.

```
subtrees(1:10)
```

```
ans =  
    10×1 htmlTree:
```



```

<A class="svg_link navbar-brand" href="https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"><I
<A class="mwa-nav_login" href="https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.math
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps">Products</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol">Solutions</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad">Academia</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp">Support</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc">Community</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev">Events</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus">
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&amp;s_tid=gn_store">H

```

Extract the text from the subtrees using `extractHTMLText`. The result contains the link text from each link on the page.

```
str = extractHTMLText(subtrees);
str(1:10)
```

```
ans = 10x1 string array
""
"Sign In"
"Products"
"Solutions"
"Academia"
"Support"
"Community"
"Events"
"Contact Us"
"How to Buy"
```

## Input Arguments

### code — HTML code

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

HTML code, specified as a string array, a character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

---

### Tip

- To read HTML code from a web page, use `webread`.
- To extract text from an HTML file, use `extractFileText`.

---

Example: "`<a href='https://www.mathworks.com'>MathWorks</a>`"

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `cell`

## **tree — HTML tree**

`htmlTree` array

HTML tree, specified as an `htmlTree` array.

## **ex — Extraction method**

`'tree'` (default) | `'article'` | `'all-text'`

Extraction method, specified as one of the following:

Option	Description
<code>'tree'</code>	Analyze the DOM tree and text contents, then extract a block of paragraphs.
<code>'article'</code>	Detect article text and extract a block of paragraphs.
<code>'all-text'</code>	Extract all text in the HTML body, except for scripts and CSS styles.

## **See Also**

`extractFileText` | `htmlTree` | `readPDFFormData` | `tokenizedDocument` | `webread` | `writelnTextDocument`

## **Topics**

“Parse HTML and Extract Text Content”

“Extract Text Data from Files”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2018a**

# fastTextWordEmbedding

Pretrained fastText word embedding

## Syntax

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
```

## Description

`emb = fastTextWordEmbedding` returns a 300-dimensional pretrained word embedding for 1 million English words.

This function requires the Text Analytics Toolbox Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, the function provides a download link.

## Examples

### Download fastText Support Package

Download and install the Text Analytics Toolbox Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package.

Type `fastTextWordEmbedding` at the command line.

```
fastTextWordEmbedding
```

If the Text Analytics Toolbox Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package is not installed, then the function provides a link to the required support package in the Add-On Explorer. To install the support package, click the link, and then click **Install**. Check that the installation is successful by typing `emb = fastTextWordEmbedding` at the command line.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
```

```
emb =  
  wordEmbedding with properties:  
    Dimension: 300  
    Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

If the required support package is installed, then the function returns a `wordEmbedding` object.

### Map Words to Vectors and Back

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding  
  
emb =  
  wordEmbedding with properties:  
    Dimension: 300  
    Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

Map the words "Italy", "Rome", and "Paris" to vectors using `word2vec`.

```
italy = word2vec(emb, "Italy");  
rome = word2vec(emb, "Rome");  
paris = word2vec(emb, "Paris");
```

Map the vector `italy - rome + paris` to a word using `vec2word`.

```
word = vec2word(emb, italy - rome + paris)  
  
word =  
"France"
```

## Convert Documents to Sequences of Word Vectors

Convert an array of tokenized documents to sequences of word vectors using a pretrained word embedding.

Load a pretrained word embedding using the `fastTextWordEmbedding` function. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Load the weather reports data and create a `tokenizedDocument` array.

```
filename = "weatherReports.csv";  
data = readtable(filename, 'TextType', 'string');  
textData = data.event_narrative;  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Convert the documents to sequences of word vectors using `doc2sequence`. The `doc2sequence` function, by default, left-pads the sequences to have the same length. When converting large collections of documents using a high-dimensional word embedding, padding can require large amounts of memory. To prevent the function from padding the data, set the `'PaddingDirection'` option to `'none'`. Alternatively, you can control the amount of padding using the `'Length'` option.

```
sequences = doc2sequence(emb, documents, 'PaddingDirection', 'none');
```

View the sizes of the first 10 sequences. Each sequence is  $D$ -by- $S$  matrix, where  $D$  is the embedding dimension, and  $S$  is the number of word vectors in the sequence.

```
sequences(1:10)  
  
ans = 10×1 cell array  
    {300×8  single}  
    {300×39 single}  
    {300×14 single}  
    {300×14 single}  
    {300×0  single}  
    {300×15 single}  
    {300×20 single}  
    {300×6  single}  
    {300×21 single}  
    {300×10 single}
```

## Output Arguments

### **emb — Pretrained word embedding**

wordEmbedding object

Pretrained word embedding, returned as a wordEmbedding object.

## See Also

doc2sequence | isVocabularyWord | readWordEmbedding | tokenizedDocument |  
trainWordEmbedding | vec2word | word2vec | wordEmbedding |  
wordEmbeddingLayer | wordEncoding

## Topics

[“Train a Sentiment Classifier”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

**Introduced in R2018a**

## findElement

Find elements in HTML tree

### Syntax

```
subtrees = findElement(tree,selector)
```

### Description

`subtrees = findElement(tree,selector)` returns the elements in `tree` matching the CSS selector.

### Examples

#### Find Elements in HTML Tree

Read HTML code from the URL <https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics> using the `webread` function.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";  
code = webread(url);
```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```
tree = htmlTree(code);
```

Find all the hyperlinks in the HTML tree using `findElement`. The hyperlinks are nodes with element name "A".

```
selector = "A";  
subtrees = findElement(tree,selector);
```

View the first few subtrees.

```
subtrees(1:10)
```



```
ans =
  10x1 htmlTree:

  <A class="svg_link navbar-brand" href="https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"><I
  <A class="mwa-nav_login" href="https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.mathw
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps">Products</A>
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol">Solutions</A>
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad">Academia</A>
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp">Support</A>
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc">Community</A>
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev">Events</A>
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus">
  <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&amp;s_tid=gn_store">H
```

Extract the text from the subtrees using `extractHTMLText`. The result contains the link text from each link on the page.

```
str = extractHTMLText(subtrees);
str(1:10)
```

```
ans = 10x1 string array
""
"Sign In"
"Products"
"Solutions"
"Academia"
"Support"
"Community"
"Events"
"Contact Us"
"How to Buy"
```

## Input Arguments

### **tree** – HTML tree

scalar `htmlTree` object

HTML tree, specified as a scalar `htmlTree` object.

## selector — CSS selector

string scalar | character vector

CSS selector, specified as a string scalar or a character vector. For more information, see “CSS Selectors” on page 1-143.

## Output Arguments

### subtrees — Matching HTML subtrees

htmlTree array

Matching HTML subtrees, returned as an htmlTree array.

## More About

### HTML Elements

A typical HTML element contains the following components:

- Element name - Name of the HTML tag. The element name corresponds to the Name property of the HTML tree.
- Attributes - Additional information about the tag. HTML attributes have the form *name*="value", where *name* and *value* denote the attribute name and value respectively. The attributes appear inside the opening HTML tag. To get the attribute values from an HTML tree, use `getAttribute`.
- Content - Element content. The content appears between opening and closing HTML tags. The content can be text data or nested HTML elements. To extract the text from an htmlTree object, use `extractHTMLText`. To get the nested HTML elements of an htmlTree object, use the Children property.

For example, the HTML element `<a href="https://www.mathworks.com">Home</a>` comprises the following components:

Component	Value	Description
Element name	a	Element is a hyperlink

Component		Value	Description
Attribute	Attribute name	href	Hyperlink reference
	Attribute value	"https:// www.mathworks.co m"	Hyperlink reference value
Content		Home	Text to display

## CSS Selectors

CSS selectors specify patterns to match elements in a tree.

This table shows some examples showing how to extract different HTML elements from an HTML tree:

Task	CSS Selector	Example
Find all paragraph (<p>) elements.	"p"	findElement(tree,"p")
Find all paragraph (<p>) and list item (<li>) elements.	"p,li"	findElement(tree,"p,li")
Find all paragraph (<p>) elements that are inside table (<table>) elements.	"table p"	findElement(tree,"table p")
Find all hyperlink (<a>) elements with hyperlink reference attribute (href) values ending with ".pdf".	"a[href\$=".pdf"]"	findElement(tree,"a[href\$=".pdf"]")
Find all paragraph (<p>) elements that are the first child of their parent.	"p:first-child"	findElement(tr,"p:first-child")
Find all paragraph (<p>) elements that are the first paragraph element of their parent.	"p:first-of-type"	findElement(tr,"p:first-of-type")

Task	CSS Selector	Example
Find all emphasis (<em>) elements where the parent is a paragraph (<p>) element.	"p > em"	<code>findElement(tr,"p &gt; em")</code>
Find all paragraph (<p>) elements appearing immediately after a heading 1 (<h1>) element	"h1 + p"	<code>findElement(tr,"h1 + p")</code>
Find all empty elements.	":empty"	<code>findElement(tr,":empty")</code>
Find all nonempty label (<label>) elements.	"label:not(:empty)"	<code>findElement(tr,"label:not(:empty)")</code>

The `findElement` function supports all of CSS level 3, except for the selectors `":lang"`, `":checked"`, `":link"`, `":active"`, `":hover"`, `":focus"`, `":target"`, `":enabled"`, and `":disabled"`.

For more information about CSS selectors, see [1].

## References

[1] *CSS Selector Reference*. [https://www.w3schools.com/cssref/css\\_selectors.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/cssref/css_selectors.asp)

## See Also

`extractFileText` | `extractHTMLText` | `getAttribute` | `htmlTree` | `ismissing` | `readPDFFormData` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Parse HTML and Extract Text Content”

“Extract Text Data from Files”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

## Introduced in R2018b

## fitlda

Fit latent Dirichlet allocation (LDA) model

### Syntax

```
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)
mdl = fitlda(counts,numTopics)
mdl = fitlda( ____,Name,Value)
```

### Description

A latent Dirichlet allocation (LDA) model is a topic model which discovers underlying topics in a collection of documents and infers word probabilities in topics. If the model was fit using a bag-of-n-grams model, then the software treats the n-grams as individual words.

`mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)` fits an LDA model with `numTopics` topics to the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`mdl = fitlda(counts,numTopics)` fits an LDA model to the documents represented by a matrix of frequency counts.

`mdl = fitlda( ____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Fit LDA Model

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words

separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
    Counts: [154x3092 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
    NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with four topics.

```
numTopics = 4;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.278271 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	1.29		1.215e+03	1.000	0
1	0.03	1.0482e-02	1.128e+03	1.000	0
2	0.03	1.7190e-03	1.115e+03	1.000	0
3	0.03	4.3796e-04	1.118e+03	1.000	0
4	0.03	9.4193e-04	1.111e+03	1.000	0
5	0.04	3.7079e-04	1.108e+03	1.000	0
6	0.09	9.5777e-05	1.107e+03	1.000	0

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:
    NumTopics: 4
```

```
      WordConcentration: 1
      TopicConcentration: 1
      CorpusTopicProbabilities: [0.2500 0.2500 0.2500 0.2500]
      DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x4 double]
      TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x4 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
      TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
      FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Visualize the topics using word clouds.

```
figure
for topicIdx = 1:4
    subplot(2,2,topicIdx)
    wordcloud mdl, topicIdx);
    title("Topic: " + topicIdx)
end
```

**Topic: 1**



**Topic: 2**



**Topic: 3**



**Topic: 4**



## Fit LDA Model to Word Count Matrix

Fit an LDA model to a collection of documents represented by a word count matrix.

To reproduce the results of this example, set `rng` to 'default'.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. `sonnetsCounts.mat` contains a matrix of word counts and a corresponding vocabulary of preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the `j`th word of the vocabulary appears in the `i`th document.



```
load sonnetsCounts.mat
size(counts)
```

```
ans = 1×2
```

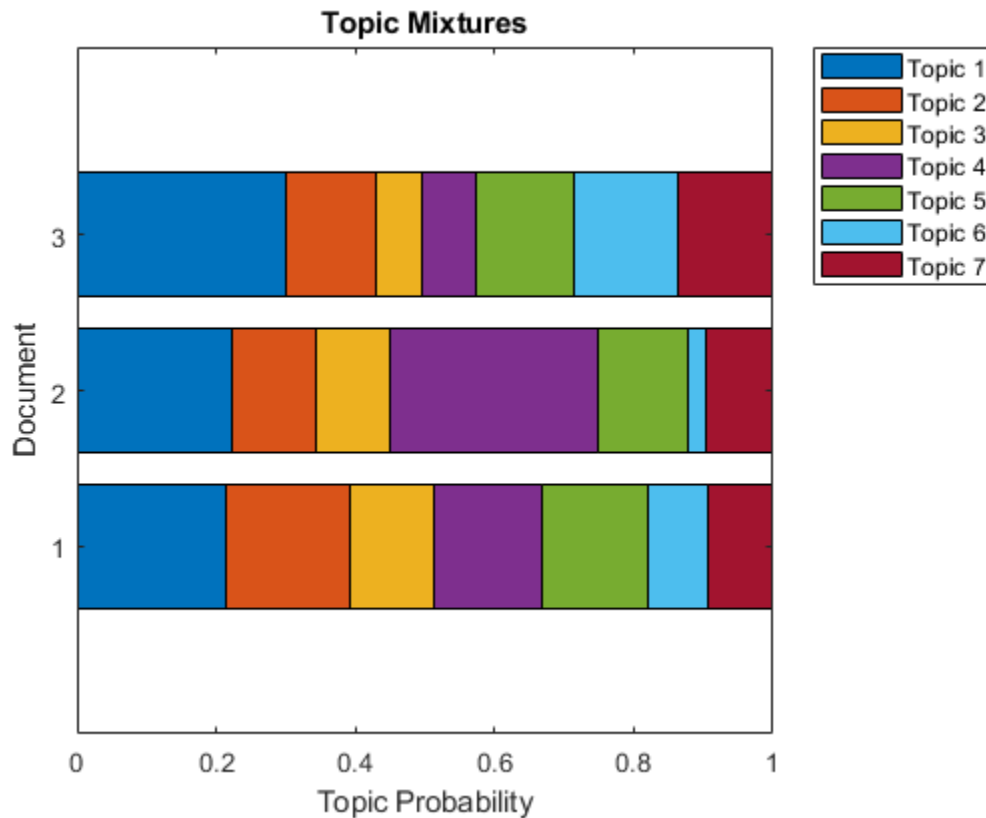
```
154    3092
```

Fit an LDA model with 7 topics. To suppress the verbose output, set 'Verbose' to 0.

```
numTopics = 7;
mdl = fitlda(counts,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

Visualize multiple topic mixtures using stacked bar charts. Visualize the topic mixtures of the first three input documents.

```
topicMixtures = transform(mdl,count(1:3,:));
figure
barh(topicMixtures,'stacked')
xlim([0 1])
title("Topic Mixtures")
xlabel("Topic Probability")
ylabel("Document")
legend("Topic "+ string(1:numTopics),'Location','northeastoutside')
```



### Predict Top LDA Topics of Documents

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to 'default'.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);
```

```
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics.

```
numTopics = 20;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.170598 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.68		1.159e+03	5.000	0
1	0.50	5.4884e-02	8.028e+02	5.000	0
2	0.43	4.7400e-03	7.778e+02	5.000	0
3	0.42	3.4597e-03	7.602e+02	5.000	0
4	0.79	3.4662e-03	7.430e+02	5.000	0
5	0.31	2.9259e-03	7.288e+02	5.000	0
6	0.37	6.4180e-05	7.291e+02	5.000	0

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:

      NumTopics: 20
  WordConcentration: 1
  TopicConcentration: 5
  CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]
  DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]
  TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]
```

```
Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Predict the top topics for an array of new documents.

```
newDocuments = tokenizedDocument([
    "what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell as sweet."
    "if music be the food of love, play on."]);
topicIdx = predict mdl, newDocuments)
```

```
topicIdx = 2x1
```

```
19
 8
```

Visualize the predicted topics using word clouds.

```
figure
subplot(1,2,1)
wordcloud mdl, topicIdx(1);
title("Topic " + topicIdx(1))
subplot(1,2,2)
wordcloud mdl, topicIdx(2);
title("Topic " + topicIdx(2))
```



## Input Arguments

### bag — Input model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

### numTopics — Number of topics

positive integer

Number of topics, specified as a positive integer. For an example showing how to choose the number of topics, see “Choose Number of Topics for LDA Model”.

Example: 200

## **counts — Frequency counts of words**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. If you specify 'DocumentsIn' to be 'rows', then the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the *j*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *i*th document. Otherwise, the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the *i*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *j*th document.

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name, Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: 'Solver', 'avb' specifies to use approximate variational Bayes as the solver.

### **Solver Options**

#### **Solver — Solver for optimization**

'cgs' (default) | 'savb' | 'avb' | 'cvb0'

Solver for optimization, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Solver' and one of the following:

#### **Stochastic Solver**

- 'savb' - Use stochastic approximate variational Bayes [1] [2]. This solver is best suited for large datasets and can fit a good model in fewer passes of the data.

#### **Batch Solvers**

- 'cgs' - Use collapsed Gibbs sampling [3]. This solver can be more accurate at the cost of taking longer to run. The `resume` function does not support models fitted with CGS.

- 'avb' - Use approximate variational Bayes [4]. This solver typically runs more quickly than collapsed Gibbs sampling and collapsed variational Bayes, but can be less accurate.
- 'cvb0' - Use collapsed variational Bayes, zeroth order [4] [5]. This solver can be more accurate than approximate variational Bayes at the cost of taking longer to run.

For an example showing how to compare solvers, see “Compare LDA Solvers”.

Example: 'Solver', 'savb'

### **LogLikelihoodTolerance — Relative tolerance on log-likelihood**

0.0001 (default) | positive scalar

Relative tolerance on log-likelihood, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'LogLikelihoodTolerance' and a positive scalar. The optimization terminates when this tolerance is reached.

Example: 'LogLikelihoodTolerance', 0.001

### **FitTopicProbabilities — Option for fitting corpus topic probabilities**

true (default) | false

Option for fitting topic concentration, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'FitTopicConcentration' and either true or false.

The function fits the Dirichlet prior  $\alpha = \alpha_0(p_1 p_2 \dots p_K)$  on the topic mixtures, where  $\alpha_0$  is the topic concentration and  $p_1, \dots, p_K$  are the corpus topic probabilities which sum to 1.

Example: 'FitTopicProbabilities', false

Data Types: logical

### **FitTopicConcentration — Option for fitting topic concentration**

true | false

Option for fitting topic concentration, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'FitTopicConcentration' and either true or false.

For batch the solvers 'cgs', 'avb', and 'cvb0', the default for FitTopicConcentration is true. For the stochastic solver 'savb', the default is false.

The function fits the Dirichlet prior  $\alpha = \alpha_0(p_1 p_2 \dots p_K)$  on the topic mixtures, where  $\alpha_0$  is the topic concentration and  $p_1, \dots, p_K$  are the corpus topic probabilities which sum to 1.

Example: `'FitTopicConcentration', false`

Data Types: `logical`

## **InitialTopicConcentration — Initial estimate of the topic concentration**

`numTopics/4` (default) | `nonnegative scalar`

Initial estimate of the topic concentration, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'InitialTopicConcentration'` and a nonnegative scalar. The function sets the concentration per topic to `TopicConcentration/NumTopics`. For more information, see “Latent Dirichlet Allocation” on page 1-159.

Example: `'InitialTopicConcentration', 25`

## **TopicOrder — Topic Order**

`'initial-fit-probability'` (default) | `'unordered'`

Topic order, specified as one of the following:

- `'initial-fit-probability'` - Sort the topics by the corpus topic probabilities of input document set (the `CorpusTopicProbabilities` property).
- `'unordered'` - Do not sort the topics.

## **WordConcentration — Word concentration**

`1` (default) | `nonnegative scalar`

Word concentration, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'WordConcentration'` and a nonnegative scalar. The software sets the Dirichlet prior on the topics (the word probabilities per topic) to be the symmetric Dirichlet distribution parameter with the value `WordConcentration/numWords`, where `numWords` is the vocabulary size of the input documents. For more information, see “Latent Dirichlet Allocation” on page 1-159.

## **DocumentsIn — Orientation of documents**

`'rows'` (default) | `'columns'`

Orientation of documents in the word count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DocumentsIn'` and one of the following:

- `'rows'` - Input is a matrix of word counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- `'columns'` - Input is a transposed matrix of word counts with columns corresponding to documents.



This option only applies if you specify the input documents as a matrix of word counts.

---

**Note** If you orient your word count matrix so that documents correspond to columns and specify 'DocumentsIn', 'columns', then you might experience a significant reduction in optimization-execution time.

---

### **Batch Solver Options**

#### **IterationLimit — Maximum number of iterations**

100 (default) | positive integer

Maximum number of iterations, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'IterationLimit' and a positive integer.

This option supports batch solvers only ('cgs', 'avb', or 'cvb0').

Example: 'IterationLimit',200

### **Stochastic Solver Options**

#### **DataPassLimit — Maximum number of passes through data**

1 (default) | positive integer

Maximum number of passes through the data, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'DataPassLimit' and a positive integer.

If you specify 'DataPassLimit' but not 'MiniBatchLimit', then the default value of 'MiniBatchLimit' is ignored. If you specify both 'DataPassLimit' and 'MiniBatchLimit', then fitlda uses the argument that results in processing the fewest observations.

This option supports only the stochastic ('savb') solver.

Example: 'DataPassLimit',2

#### **MiniBatchLimit — Maximum number of mini-batch passes**

positive integer

Maximum number of mini-batch passes, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'MiniBatchLimit' and a positive integer.

If you specify 'MiniBatchLimit' but not 'DataPassLimit', then fitlda ignores the default value of 'DataPassLimit'. If you specify both 'MiniBatchLimit' and

'DataPassLimit', then `fitlda` uses the argument that results in processing the fewest observations. The default value is `ceil(numDocuments/MiniBatchSize)`, where `numDocuments` is the number of input documents.

This option supports only the stochastic ('savb') solver.

Example: `'MiniBatchLimit', 200`

### **MiniBatchSize — Mini-batch size**

1000 (default) | positive integer

Mini-batch size, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'MiniBatchLimit' and a positive integer. The function processes `MiniBatchSize` documents in each iteration.

This option supports only the stochastic ('savb') solver.

Example: `'MiniBatchSize', 512`

### **LearnRateDecay — Learning rate decay**

0.5 (default) | positive scalar less than or equal to 1

Learning rate decay, specified as the comma-separated pair 'LearnRateDecay' and a positive scalar less than or equal to 1.

For mini-batch  $t$ , the function sets the learning rate to  $\eta(t) = 1/(1 + t)^\kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is the learning rate decay.

If `LearnRateDecay` is close to 1, then the learning rate decays faster and the model learns mostly from the earlier mini-batches. If `LearnRateDecay` is close to 0, then the learning rate decays slower and the model continues to learn from more mini-batches. For more information, see “Stochastic Solver” on page 1-162.

This option supports the stochastic solver only ('savb').

Example: `'LearnRateDecay', 0.75`

### **Display Options**

#### **ValidationData — Validation data**

[] (default) | `bagOfWords` object | `bagOfNgrams` object | sparse matrix of word counts

Validation data to monitor optimization convergence, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'ValidationData' and a `bagOfWords` object, a `bagOfNgrams` object,

or a sparse matrix of word counts. If the validation data is a matrix, then the data must have the same orientation and the same number of words as the input documents.

### **Verbose — Verbosity level**

1 (default) | 0

Verbosity level, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Verbose' and one of the following:

- 0 - Do not display verbose output.
- 1 - Display progress information.

Example: 'Verbose', 0

## **Output Arguments**

### **mdl — Output LDA model**

ldaModel object

Output LDA model, returned as an ldaModel object.

## **More About**

### **Latent Dirichlet Allocation**

A *latent Dirichlet allocation* (LDA) model is a document topic model which discovers underlying topics in a collection of documents and infers word probabilities in topics. LDA models a collection of  $D$  documents as topic mixtures  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_D$ , over  $K$  topics characterized by vectors of word probabilities  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$ . The model assumes that the topic mixtures  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_D$ , and the topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  follow a Dirichlet distribution with concentration parameters  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  respectively.

The topic mixtures  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_D$  are probability vectors of length  $K$ , where  $K$  is the number of topics. The entry  $\theta_{di}$  is the probability of topic  $i$  appearing in the  $d$ th document. The topic mixtures correspond to the rows of the DocumentTopicProbabilities property of the ldaModel object.

The topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  are probability vectors of length  $V$ , where  $V$  is the number of words in the vocabulary. The entry  $\varphi_{iv}$  corresponds to the probability of the  $v$ th word of the vocabulary appearing in the  $i$ th topic. The topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  correspond to the columns of the `TopicWordProbabilities` property of the `LdaModel` object.

Given the topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  and Dirichlet prior  $\alpha$  on the topic mixtures, LDA assumes the following generative process for a document:

- 1** Sample a topic mixture  $\theta \sim \text{Dirichlet}(\alpha)$ . The random variable  $\theta$  is a probability vector of length  $K$ , where  $K$  is the number of topics.
- 2** For each word in the document:
  - a** Sample a topic index  $z \sim \text{Categorical}(\theta)$ . The random variable  $z$  is an integer from 1 through  $K$ , where  $K$  is the number of topics.
  - b** Sample a word  $w \sim \text{Categorical}(\varphi_z)$ . The random variable  $w$  is an integer from 1 through  $V$ , where  $V$  is the number of words in the vocabulary, and represents the corresponding word in the vocabulary.

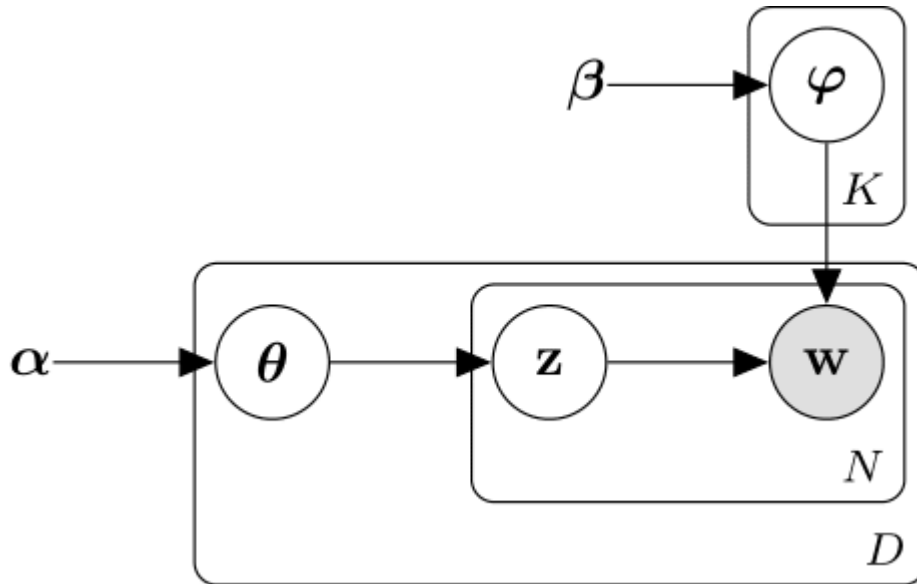
Under this generative process, the joint distribution of a document with words  $w_1, \dots, w_N$ , with topic mixture  $\theta$ , and with topic indices  $z_1, \dots, z_N$  is given by

$$p(\theta, z, w \mid \alpha, \varphi) = p(\theta \mid \alpha) \prod_{n=1}^N p(z_n \mid \theta) p(w_n \mid z_n, \varphi),$$

where  $N$  is the number of words in the document. Summing the joint distribution over  $z$  and then integrating over  $\theta$  yields the marginal distribution of a document  $w$ :

$$p(w \mid \alpha, \varphi) = \int_{\theta} p(\theta \mid \alpha) \prod_{n=1}^N \sum_{z_n} p(z_n \mid \theta) p(w_n \mid z_n, \varphi) d\theta.$$

The following diagram illustrates the LDA model as a probabilistic graphical model. Shaded nodes are observed variables, unshaded nodes are latent variables, nodes without outlines are the model parameters. The arrows highlight dependencies between random variables and the plates indicate repeated nodes.



## Dirichlet Distribution

The *Dirichlet distribution* is a continuous generalization of the multinomial distribution. Given the number of categories  $K \geq 2$ , and concentration parameter  $\alpha$ , where  $\alpha$  is a vector of positive reals of length  $K$ , the probability density function of the Dirichlet distribution is given by

$$p(\theta | \alpha) = \frac{1}{B(\alpha)} \prod_{i=1}^K \theta_i^{\alpha_i - 1},$$

where  $B$  denotes the multivariate Beta function given by

$$B(\alpha) = \frac{\prod_{i=1}^K \Gamma(\alpha_i)}{\Gamma\left(\sum_{i=1}^K \alpha_i\right)}.$$

A special case of the Dirichlet distribution is the *symmetric Dirichlet distribution*. The symmetric Dirichlet distribution is characterized by the concentration parameter  $\alpha$ , where all the elements of  $\alpha$  are the same.

## Stochastic Solver

The stochastic solver processes documents in mini-batches. It updates the per-topic word probabilities using a weighted sum of the probabilities calculated from each mini-batch, and the probabilities from all previous mini-batches.

For mini-batch  $t$ , the solver sets the learning rate to  $\eta(t) = 1/(1 + t)^\kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is the learning rate decay.

The function uses the learning rate decay to update  $\Phi$ , the matrix of word probabilities per topic, by setting

$$\Phi^{(t)} = (1 - \eta(t))\Phi^{(t-1)} + \eta(t)\Phi^{(t*)},$$

where  $\Phi^{(t*)}$  is the matrix learned from mini-batch  $t$ , and  $\Phi^{(t-1)}$  is the matrix learned from mini-batches 1 through  $t-1$ .

Before learning begins (when  $t = 0$ ), the function initializes the initial word probabilities per topic  $\Phi^{(0)}$  with random values.

## Compatibility Considerations

### **fitlda sorts topics**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, `fitlda`, by default, sorts the topics in descending order of the topic probabilities of the input document set. This behavior makes it easier to find the topics with the highest probabilities.

In previous versions, `fitlda` does not change the topic order. To reproduce the behavior, set the 'TopicOrder' option to 'unordered'.

## References

- [1] Foulds, James, Levi Boyles, Christopher DuBois, Padhraic Smyth, and Max Welling. "Stochastic collapsed variational Bayesian inference for latent Dirichlet allocation." In *Proceedings of the 19th ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*, pp. 446-454. ACM, 2013.
- [2] Hoffman, Matthew D., David M. Blei, Chong Wang, and John Paisley. "Stochastic variational inference." *The Journal of Machine Learning Research* 14, no. 1 (2013): 1303-1347.
- [3] Griffiths, Thomas L., and Mark Steyvers. "Finding scientific topics." *Proceedings of the National academy of Sciences* 101, no. suppl 1 (2004): 5228-5235.
- [4] Asuncion, Arthur, Max Welling, Padhraic Smyth, and Yee Whye Teh. "On smoothing and inference for topic models." In *Proceedings of the Twenty-Fifth Conference on Uncertainty in Artificial Intelligence*, pp. 27-34. AUAI Press, 2009.
- [5] Teh, Yee W., David Newman, and Max Welling. "A collapsed variational Bayesian inference algorithm for latent Dirichlet allocation." In *Advances in neural information processing systems*, pp. 1353-1360. 2007.

## See Also

[bagOfNgrams](#) | [bagOfWords](#) | [fitlsa](#) | [ldaModel](#) | [logp](#) | [lsaModel](#) | [predict](#) | [resume](#) | [topkeywords](#) | [transform](#) | [wordcloud](#)

## Topics

"Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models"  
"Choose Number of Topics for LDA Model"  
"Compare LDA Solvers"  
"Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases"  
"Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning"

## Introduced in R2017b

## fitlsa

Fit LSA model

### Syntax

```
mdl = fitlsa(bag,numComponents)
mdl = fitlsa(counts,numComponents)
mdl = fitlsa( ____,Name,Value)
```

### Description

A latent semantic analysis (LSA) model discovers relationships between documents and the words that they contain. An LSA model is a dimensionality reduction tool useful for running low-dimensional statistical models on high-dimensional word counts. If the model was fit using a bag-of-n-grams model, then the software treats the n-grams as individual words.

`mdl = fitlsa(bag,numComponents)` fits an LSA model with `numComponents` components to the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`mdl = fitlsa(counts,numComponents)` fits an LSA model to the documents represented by the matrix of word counts `counts`.

`mdl = fitlsa( ____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Fit LSA Model

Fit a Latent Semantic Analysis model to a collection of documents.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words



separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LSA model with 20 components.

```
numComponents = 20;
mdl = fitlsa(bag,numComponents)

mdl =
  \lsaModel with properties:

      NumComponents: 20
  ComponentWeights: [1x20 double]
  DocumentScores: [154x20 double]
    WordScores: [3092x20 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
  FeatureStrengthExponent: 2
```

Transform new documents into lower dimensional space using the LSA model.

```
newDocuments = tokenizedDocument([
    "what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell as sweet."
    "if music be the food of love, play on."]);
dscores = transform(mdl,newDocuments)

dscores = 2x20
```

```
0.1338    0.1623    0.1680   -0.0541   -0.2464   -0.0134    0.2604   -0.0205    0.1
0.2547    0.5576   -0.0095    0.5660   -0.0643   -0.1236   -0.0082    0.0522   -0.0
```

## Fit LSA Model to Word Count Matrix

Load the example data. `sonnetsCounts.mat` contains a matrix of word counts corresponding to preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets.

```
load sonnetsCounts.mat
size(counts)
```

```
ans = 1x2
```

```
154    3092
```

Fit LSA model with 20 components. Set the feature strength exponent to 4.

```
numComponents = 20;
exponent = 4;
mdl = fitlsa(counts,numComponents, ...
    'FeatureStrengthExponent',exponent)

mdl =
    lsaModel with properties:

        NumComponents: 20
        ComponentWeights: [1x20 double]
        DocumentScores: [154x20 double]
        WordScores: [3092x20 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
        FeatureStrengthExponent: 4
```

## Input Arguments

### bag — Input model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

### **numComponents — Number of components**

positive integer

Number of components, specified as a positive integer. This value must be less than the number of the input documents, and the vocabulary size of the input documents.

Example: 200

### **counts — Frequency counts of words**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. If you specify `'DocumentsIn'` to be `'rows'`, then the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the  $j$ th word of the vocabulary appears in the  $i$ th document. Otherwise, the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the  $i$ th word of the vocabulary appears in the  $j$ th document.

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'FeatureStrengthExponent', 4` sets the feature strength exponent to 4.

### **DocumentsIn — Orientation of documents**

`'rows'` (default) | `'columns'`

Orientation of documents in the word count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DocumentsIn'` and one of the following:

- `'rows'` - Input is a matrix of word counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- `'columns'` - Input is a transposed matrix of word counts with columns corresponding to documents.

This option only applies if you specify the input documents as a matrix of word counts.

**Note** If you orient your word count matrix so that documents correspond to columns and specify 'DocumentsIn', 'columns', then you might experience a significant reduction in optimization-execution time.

---

## **FeatureStrengthExponent — Initial feature strength exponent**

2 (default) | nonnegative scalar

Initial feature strength exponent, specified as a nonnegative scalar. This value scales the feature component strengths for the `documentScores`, `wordScores`, and `transform` functions.

Example: 'FeatureStrengthExponent', 4

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

## **Output Arguments**

### **mdl — Output LSA model**

`lsaModel` object

Output LSA model, returned as an `lsaModel` object.

## **See Also**

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `fitlda` | `ldaModel` | `lsaModel` | `transform`

## **Topics**

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

“Choose Number of Topics for LDA Model”

“Compare LDA Solvers”

“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

## **Introduced in R2017b**

# getAttribute

Read HTML attribute of root node of HTML tree

## Syntax

```
str = getAttribute(tree,attr)
```

## Description

`str = getAttribute(tree,attr)` returns the attribute `attr` of the root node of `tree`. If that attribute is not set, then the function returns a missing value.

## Examples

### Get Attribute of HTML Tag

Read HTML code from the URL `https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics` using `webread`.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";  
code = webread(url);
```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```
tree = htmlTree(code);
```

Find all the hyperlinks in the HTML tree using `findElement`. The hyperlinks are the nodes with element name "A".

```
selector = "A";  
subtrees = findElement(tree,selector);  
subtrees(1:10)
```

```
ans =  
    10×1 htmlTree:
```

```
<A class="svg_link navbar-brand" href="https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"><I
<A class="mwa-nav_login" href="https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.mathw
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps">Products</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol">Solutions</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad">Academia</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp">Support</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc">Community</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev">Events</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus">
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&s_tid=gn_store">H
```

Get the hyperlink references using `getAttribute`. Specify the attribute name "href".

```
attr = "href";
str = getAttribute(subtrees,attr);
str(1:10)
```

```
ans = 10×1 string array
"https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"
"https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics/i
"https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps"
"https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol"
"https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad"
"https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp"
"https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc"
"https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev"
"https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus"
"https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&s_tid=gn_store"
```

## Input Arguments

### **tree** — HTML tree

htmlTree array

HTML tree, specified as an `htmlTree` array.

### **attr** — Attribute name

string scalar | character vector | scalar cell array containing a character vector

Attribute name, specified as a string scalar, character vector, or a scalar cell array containing a character vector.

## Output Arguments

### **str** – HTML attribute

string array

HTML attribute, returned as a string array

## More About

### HTML Elements

A typical HTML element contains the following components:

- Element name - Name of the HTML tag. The element name corresponds to the Name property of the HTML tree.
- Attributes - Additional information about the tag. HTML attributes have the form *name="value"*, where *name* and *value* denote the attribute name and value respectively. The attributes appear inside the opening HTML tag. To get the attribute values from an HTML tree, use `getAttribute`.
- Content - Element content. The content appears between opening and closing HTML tags. The content can be text data or nested HTML elements. To extract the text from an `htmlTree` object, use `extractHTMLText`. To get the nested HTML elements of an `htmlTree` object, use the `Children` property.

For example, the HTML element `<a href="https://www.mathworks.com">Home</a>` comprises the following components:

Component		Value	Description
Element name		a	Element is a hyperlink
Attribute	Attribute name	href	Hyperlink reference

<b>Component</b>		<b>Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Attribute value	"https:// www.mathworks.co m"	Hyperlink reference value
Content		Home	Text to display

## See Also

[extractFileText](#) | [extractHTMLText](#) | [findElement](#) | [htmlTree](#) | [ismissing](#) | [readPDFFormData](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

“Parse HTML and Extract Text Content”  
“Extract Text Data from Files”  
“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2018b**



# htmlTree

Parsed HTML tree

## Description

An `htmlTree` object represents a parsed HTML element or node. Extract parts of interest using the `findElement` function or the `Children` property, and extract text using the `extractHTMLText` function.

## Creation

## Syntax

```
tree = htmlTree(code)
```

## Description

`tree = htmlTree(code)` parses the HTML code in the string `code` and returns the resulting tree structure.

## Input Arguments

### **code** — HTML code

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

HTML code, specified as a string array, a character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

---

### Tip

- To read HTML code from a web page, use `webread`.
  - To extract text from an HTML file, use `extractFileText`.
-

Example: "<a href='https://www.mathworks.com'>MathWorks</a>"

Data Types: char | string | cell

## Properties

### Children — Direct descendants of element

htmlTree array

Direct descendants of the element, specified as an htmlTree array.

### Parent — Parent node

htmlTree object

Parent node in the tree, specified as an htmlTree object.

If the HTML tree is a root node, then the value of Parent is missing.

### Name — HTML element name

string scalar

HTML element name, specified as a string scalar.

For more information, see “HTML Elements” on page 1-178.

## Object Functions

findElement	Find elements in HTML tree
getAttribute	Read HTML attribute of root node of HTML tree
extractHTMLText	Extract text from HTML
ismissing	Find HTML trees without values

## Examples

### Parse HTML Code

Read HTML code from the URL <https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics> using webread.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";
code = webread(url);
```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```
tree = htmlTree(code);
```

View the element name of the root node of the tree.

```
tree.Name
```

```
ans =
"HTML"
```

View the children of the root node.

```
tree.Children
```

```
ans =
  4×1 htmlTree:
    " "
    <HEAD><TITLE>Text Analytics Toolbox Documentation</TITLE><META charset="utf-8"/><META
    " "
    <BODY id="responsive_offcanvas"><!-- Mobile TopNav: Start --><DIV class="header vi
```

Extract the text from the HTML tree using `extractHTMLText`.

```
str = extractHTMLText(tree)
```

```
str =
    "Text Analytics Toolbox™ provides algorithms and visualizations for preprocessing,
    Text Analytics Toolbox includes tools for processing raw text from sources such as
    Using machine learning techniques such as LSA, LDA, and word embeddings, you can t
```

## Find Elements in HTML Tree

Read HTML code from the URL <https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics> using the `webread` function.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";  
code = webread(url);
```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```
tree = htmlTree(code);
```

Find all the hyperlinks in the HTML tree using `findElement`. The hyperlinks are nodes with element name "A".

```
selector = "A";  
subtrees = findElement(tree,selector);
```

View the first few subtrees.

```
subtrees(1:10)
```

```
ans =  
    10×1 htmlTree:
```

```
    <A class="svg_link navbar-brand" href="https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"><I  
    <A class="mwa-nav_login" href="https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.math  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps">Products</A>  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol">Solutions</A>  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad">Academia</A>  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp">Support</A>  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc">Community</A>  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev">Events</A>  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus">  
    <A href="https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&amp;s_tid=gn_store">H
```

Extract the text from the subtrees using `extractHTMLText`. The result contains the link text from each link on the page.

```
str = extractHTMLText(subtrees);  
str(1:10)
```

```
ans = 10×1 string array  
    ""  
    "Sign In"  
    "Products"  
    "Solutions"  
    "Academia"  
    "Support"
```

```

"Community"
"Events"
"Contact Us"
"How to Buy"

```

### Get Attribute of HTML Tag

Read HTML code from the URL `https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics` using `webread`.

```

url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";
code = webread(url);

```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```

tree = htmlTree(code);

```

Find all the hyperlinks in the HTML tree using `findElement`. The hyperlinks are the nodes with element name "A".

```

selector = "A";
subtrees = findElement(tree,selector);
subtrees(1:10)

```

```

ans =
    10×1 htmlTree:

```

```

<A class="svg_link navbar-brand" href="https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"><I
<A class="mwa-nav_login" href="https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.mathw
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps">Products</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol">Solutions</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad">Academia</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp">Support</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc">Community</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev">Events</A>
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus">
<A href="https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&s_tid=gn_store">H

```

Get the hyperlink references using `getAttribute`. Specify the attribute name "href".

```
attr = "href";
str = getAttribute(subtrees,attr);
str(1:10)

ans = 10×1 string array
    "https://www.mathworks.com?s_tid=gn_logo"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/login?uri=http://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics/i
    "https://www.mathworks.com/products.html?s_tid=gn_ps"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/solutions.html?s_tid=gn_sol"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/academia.html?s_tid=gn_acad"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/support.html?s_tid=gn_supp"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/?s_tid=gn_mlc"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/company/events.html?s_tid=gn_ev"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/company/aboutus/contact_us.html?s_tid=gn_cntus"
    "https://www.mathworks.com/store?s_cid=store_top_nav&s_tid=gn_store"
```

## More About

### HTML Elements

A typical HTML element contains the following components:

- Element name - Name of the HTML tag. The element name corresponds to the Name property of the HTML tree.
- Attributes - Additional information about the tag. HTML attributes have the form *name*="value", where *name* and *value* denote the attribute name and value respectively. The attributes appear inside the opening HTML tag. To get the attribute values from an HTML tree, use `getAttribute`.
- Content - Element content. The content appears between opening and closing HTML tags. The content can be text data or nested HTML elements. To extract the text from an `htmlTree` object, use `extractHTMLText`. To get the nested HTML elements of an `htmlTree` object, use the `Children` property.

For example, the HTML element `<a href="https://www.mathworks.com">Home</a>` comprises the following components:

Component		Value	Description
Element name		a	Element is a hyperlink
Attribute	Attribute name	href	Hyperlink reference
	Attribute value	"https:// www.mathworks.co m"	Hyperlink reference value
Content		Home	Text to display

## See Also

extractHTMLText | findElement | getAttribute | ismissing | readPDFFormData  
| tokenizedDocument

## Topics

"Parse HTML and Extract Text Content"

"Extract Text Data from Files"

"Prepare Text Data for Analysis"

"Create Simple Text Model for Classification"

**Introduced in R2018b**

## ind2word

Map encoding index to word

## Syntax

```
words = ind2word(enc,M)
```

## Description

`words = ind2word(enc,M)` returns the words corresponding to the encoding indices in `M` according to the word encoding `enc`.

## Examples

### Map Encoding Indices to Words

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);  
documents(1:10)
```

```
ans =  
  10x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
 70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die  
 71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field  
 65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh  
 71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega  
 61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants s
```



```

68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make sv
64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappea
70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j
70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless
69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th

```

Create a word encoding.

```

enc = wordEncoding(documents)

enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:
    NumWords: 3092
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]

```

View the words corresponding to indices 1, 3, and 5 using the `ind2word` function.

```

idx = [1 3 5];
words = ind2word(enc,idx)

words = 1x3 string array
    "fairest"    "desire"    "thereby"

```

## Input Arguments

### **enc** — Input word encoding

wordEncoding object

Input word encoding, specified as a wordEncoding object.

### **M** — Word encoding indices

vector of positive integers

Word encoding indices, specified as a vector of positive integers.

## Output Arguments

### words — Output words

string vector

Output words, returned as a string vector.

## See Also

`doc2sequence` | `fastTextWordEmbedding` | `isVocabularyWord` |  
`tokenizedDocument` | `vec2word` | `word2ind` | `wordEmbedding` |  
`wordEmbeddingLayer` | `wordEncoding`

## Topics

[“Train a Sentiment Classifier”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

**Introduced in R2018b**

# ismember

(To be removed) Test if word is member of word embedding

---

**Note** `ismember` will be removed in a future release. Use `isVocabularyWord` instead. For more information, see “Compatibility Considerations”.

---

## Syntax

```
tf = ismember(emb,words)
```

## Description

`tf = ismember(emb,words)` returns an array containing logical 1 (true) where the word in `words` is a member of the word embedding `emb`. Elsewhere, the array contains logical 0 (false).

## Examples

### Test If Word Is Member of Embedding

Test to determine if words are members of a word embedding.

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
```

```
emb =
```

```
wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 300  
Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

Test if the words "I", "love", and "fastTextWordEmbedding" are in the word embedding.

```
words = ["I" "love" "fastTextWordEmbedding"];  
tf = ismember(emb,words)
```

```
tf =
```

```
1×3 logical array
```

```
1 1 0
```

## Input Arguments

### **emb** — Input word embedding

wordEmbedding object

Input word embedding, specified as a wordEmbedding object.

### **words** — Input words

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify words as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Compatibility Considerations

### **ismember will be removed**

*Warns starting in R2018b*

To update your code, for wordEmbedding object input, change the function name from `ismember` to `isVocabularyWord`. You do not need to change the arguments. The syntaxes are equivalent.

## See Also

[fastTextWordEmbedding](#) | [isVocabularyWord](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [vec2word](#) | [word2vec](#) | [wordEmbedding](#)

## Topics

[“Train a Sentiment Classifier”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

**Introduced in R2017b**

## ismissing

Find HTML trees without values

### Syntax

```
tf = ismissing(tree)
```

### Description

`tf = ismissing(tree)` returns a logical array that indicates which elements of `tree` do not reference HTML trees. For example, if `tree` is given by the `Parent` property of a root node, then the function returns 1 (`true`).

### Examples

#### Test If HTML Tree Is Root Node

To test if an HTML tree object represents a root node, test that the `Parent` property is missing.

Read HTML code from the URL <https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics> using `webread`.

```
url = "https://www.mathworks.com/help/textanalytics";  
code = webread(url);
```

Parse the HTML code using `htmlTree`.

```
tree = htmlTree(code);
```

Test if the parent of `tree` references an HTML tree.

```
tf = ismissing(tree.Parent)
```

```
tf = logical  
    1
```

Since `tree` represents the root node of the HTML tree, the value of `tree.Parent` is missing and the `ismissing` function returns 1 (true).

## Input Arguments

### **tree** – HTML tree

htmlTree array

HTML tree, specified as an htmlTree array.

## See Also

[extractFileText](#) | [extractHTMLText](#) | [findElement](#) | [getAttribute](#) | [htmlTree](#) | [readPDFFormData](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

“Parse HTML and Extract Text Content”

“Extract Text Data from Files”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

## Introduced in R2018b

## isVocabularyWord

Test if word is member of word embedding or encoding

### Syntax

```
tf = isVocabularyWord(emb, words)
tf = isVocabularyWord(enc, words)
```

### Description

`tf = isVocabularyWord(emb, words)` tests if the elements of `words` are members of the word embedding `emb`. The function returns a logical array containing `1` (`true`) where the words are members of the word embedding. Elsewhere, the array contains `0` (`false`).

`tf = isVocabularyWord(enc, words)` tests if the elements of `words` are members of the word encoding `enc`.

### Examples

#### Test If Word Is Member of Embedding

Test to determine if words are members of a word embedding.

Load a pretrained word embedding using the `fastTextWordEmbedding` function. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
emb =
  wordEmbedding with properties:
    Dimension: 300
```



```
Vocabulary: [1×999994 string]
```

Test if the words "I", "love", and "fastTextWordEmbedding" are in the word embedding.

```
words = ["I" "love" "fastTextWordEmbedding"];
tf = isVocabularyWord(emb,words)
```

```
tf = 1×3 logical array
```

```
1 1 0
```

## Input Arguments

### **emb** — Input word embedding

wordEmbedding object

Input word embedding, specified as a wordEmbedding object.

### **enc** — Input word encoding

wordEncoding object

Input word encoding, specified as a wordEncoding object.

### **words** — Input words

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify words as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: string | char | cell

## See Also

doc2sequence | fastTextWordEmbedding | tokenizedDocument | vec2word | word2vec | wordEmbedding

## **Topics**

“Train a Sentiment Classifier”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

**Introduced in R2018b**

# join

Combine multiple bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams models

## Syntax

```
newBag = join(bag)
newBag = join(bag,dim)
```

## Description

`newBag = join(bag)` combines the elements in the array `bag` by merging the frequency counts. The function combines the elements along the first dimension not equal to 1.

`newBag = join(bag,dim)` combines the elements in the array `bag` along the dimension `dim`.

## Examples

### Combine Bag-of-Words Models

Create an array of two bags-of-words models from tokenized documents.

```
str = [ ...
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
bag(1) = bagOfWords(documents(1));
bag(2) = bagOfWords(documents(2))
```

```
bag=1x2 object
    1x2 bagOfWords array with properties:
```

```
    Counts
    Vocabulary
```

```
NumWords
NumDocuments
```

Combine the bag-of-words models using `join`.

```
bag = join(bag)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
    Counts: [2x7 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x7 string]
    NumWords: 7
    NumDocuments: 2
```

## Create Bag-of-Words Model in Parallel

If your text data is contained in multiple files in a folder, then you can import the text data and create a bag-of-words model in parallel using `parfor`. If you have Parallel Computing Toolbox™ installed, then the `parfor` loop runs in parallel, otherwise, it runs in serial. Use `join` to combine an array of bag-of-words models into one model.

Create a bag-of-words model from a collection of files. The examples sonnets have file names "exampleSonnetN.txt", where N is the number of the sonnet. Get a list of the files and their locations using `dir`.

```
fileLocation = fullfile(matlabroot, 'examples', 'textanalytics', 'exampleSonnet*.txt');
fileInfo = dir(fileLocation)
```

```
fileInfo=5x6 struct
  name
  folder
  date
  bytes
  isdir
  datenum
```

Initialize an empty bag-of-words model and then loop over the files and create an array of bag-of-words models.

```

bag = bagOfWords;

numFiles = numel(fileInfo);
parfor i = 1:numFiles
    f = fileInfo(i);
    filename = fullfile(f.folder,f.name);

    textData = extractFileText(filename);
    document = tokenizedDocument(textData);
    bag(i) = bagOfWords(document);
end

```

Starting parallel pool (parpool) using the 'local' profile ...  
 Connected to the parallel pool (number of workers: 12).

Combine the bag-of-words models using `join`.

```

bag = join(bag)

bag =
    bagOfWords with properties:
        Counts: [5x3275 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x3275 string]
        NumWords: 3275
        NumDocuments: 5

```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Array of bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams models

bagOfWords array | bagOfNgrams array

Array of bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams models, specified as a `bagOfWords` array or a `bagOfNgrams` array. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` array, then each element to be joined must have the same value for the `NgramLengths` property.

### **dim** — Dimension along which to join models

positive integer

Dimension along which to join models, specified as a positive integer. If `dim` is not specified, then the default is the first dimension with a size that does not equal 1.

## Output Arguments

### **newBag — Output model**

bagOfWords array | bagOfNgrams array

Output model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. The type of `newBag` is the same as the type of `bag`. `newBag` has the same data type as the input model and has a size of 1 along the dimension being joined.

## See Also

`addDocument` | `bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `encode` | `removeDocument` | `removeEmptyDocuments` | `tfidf` | `tokenizedDocument` | `topkngrams` | `topkeywords`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”  
“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”  
“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

**Introduced in R2018a**

# joinWords

Convert documents to string by joining words

## Syntax

```
newStr = joinWords(documents)
newStr = joinWords(documents,delim)
```

## Description

`newStr = joinWords(documents)` converts a `tokenizedDocument` array to a string array by joining the words in each document with a space.

`newStr = joinWords(documents,delim)` joins the words with delimiter `delim` instead of a space.

## Examples

### Convert Documents to String by Joining Words

Convert a `tokenizedDocument` array to a string array by joining the words with a space.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"])
```

```
documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

```
str = joinWords(documents)
```

```
str = 2x1 string array
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"
```

Convert a `tokenizedDocument` array to a string array by joining the words with an underscore.

```
str = joinWords(documents, "_")

str = 2x1 string array
    "an_example_of_a_short_sentence"
    "a_second_short_sentence"
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

### **delim** — Delimiter to join words

string scalar | character vector | scalar cell array

Delimiter to join words, specified as a string scalar, character vector, or scalar cell array containing a character vector.

Example: "\_"

Example: '\_'

Example: {'\_'}

Data Types: char | string | cell

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Output text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors



Output text, returned as a string array, a character vector, or cell array of character vectors. `str` and `newStr` have the same data type.

## See Also

`context` | `doc2cell` | `doclength` | `string` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)

**Introduced in R2017b**

## knnsearch

Find nearest neighbors by edit distance

### Syntax

```
idx = knnsearch(eds,words)
[idx,d] = knnsearch(eds,words)
[idx,d] = knnsearch(eds,words,Name,Value)
```

### Description

`idx = knnsearch(eds,words)` finds the indices of the nearest neighbors in the edit distance searcher `eds` to each element in `words`.

`[idx,d] = knnsearch(eds,words)` also returns the edit distances between the elements of `words` and the nearest neighbors.

`[idx,d] = knnsearch(eds,words,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Find Nearest Words

Create an edit distance searcher.

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Simulink"];
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,2);
```

Find the nearest words to "MALTAB" and "MatWorks".

```
words = ["MALTAB" "MatWorks"];
idx = knnsearch(eds,words)
```

```
idx = 2×1
     2
     1
```

Get the words from the vocabulary using the returned indices.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx)
```

```
nearestWords = 1×2 string array
    "MATLAB"    "MathWorks"
```

### Find Edit Distances to Nearest Words

Create an edit distance searcher.

```
vocabulary = ["MATLAB" "Simulink" "MathWorks"];
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,2);
```

Find the nearest words and their edit distances to "MatWorks" and "MALTAB".

```
words = ["MatWorks" "MALTAB"];
[idx,d] = knnsearch(eds,words)
```

```
idx = 2×1
     3
     1
```

```
d = 2×1
     1
     2
```

Get the words from the vocabulary using the returned indices.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx)
```

```
nearestWords = 1x2 string array
    "MathWorks"    "MATLAB"
```

Changing the word "MatWorks" to "MathWorks" requires one edit: an insertion. Changing the word "MALTAB" into "MATLAB" requires two edits: a deletion and an insertion.

## Find Multiple Neighbors

Create an edit distance searcher.

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Analytics"];
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,5);
```

Find the two nearest words and their edit distances to "Math" and "Analysis".

```
words = ["Math" "Analysis"];
idx = knnsearch(eds,words,'K',2)
```

```
idx = 2x2
```

```
     1     2
     3    NaN
```

View the two closest words to "Math".

```
idxMath = idx(1,:);
newWords = eds.Vocabulary(idxMath)
```

```
newWords = 1x2 string array
    "MathWorks"    "MATLAB"
```

There is only one word within the maximum edit distance from "Analysis", so the function returns NaN for the other indices. View the nearest words with valid indices.

```
idxAnalysis = idx(2,:);
idxAnalysis(isnan(idxAnalysis)) = [];
newWords = eds.Vocabulary(idxAnalysis)
```

```
newWords =  
"Analytics"
```

## Input Arguments

### **eds** — Edit distance searcher

`editDistanceSearcher`

Edit distance searcher, specified as an `editDistanceSearcher` object.

### **words** — Input words

`string vector` | `character vector` | `cell array of character vectors`

Input words, specified as a `string vector`, `character vector`, or `cell array of character vectors`. If you specify `words` as a `character vector`, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `knnsearch(eds, words, 'K', 3)` finds the nearest three neighbors in `eds` to the elements of `words`.

### **K** — Number of nearest neighbors to find

1 (default) | positive integer

Number of nearest neighbors to find for each element in `words`, specified as a positive integer.

Example: `'K', 3`

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

## **IncludeTies — Option to include neighbors whose distance values are equal**

false (default) | true

Option to return neighbors whose distance values are equal, specified as true or false.

If 'IncludeTies' is false, then the function returns the  $K$  neighbors with the shortest edit distance, where  $K$  is the number of neighbors to find. In this case, the function outputs  $N$ -by- $K$  matrices, where  $N$  is the number of input words. To specify  $K$ , use the 'K' name-value pair argument.

If 'IncludeTies' is true, then the function also returns the neighbors whose distances are equal to the  $K$ th smallest distance in the output. In this case, the function outputs cell arrays of size  $N$ -by-1, where  $N$  is the number of input words. The elements of the cell arrays are vectors with at least  $K$  elements. The function sorts the neighbors in each vector in ascending order of distance.

Example: 'IncludeTies', true

Data Types: logical

## **Output Arguments**

### **idx — Indices of nearest neighbors in searcher**

matrix | cell array of vectors

Indices of nearest neighbors in the searcher, returned as a matrix or a cell array of vectors.

If 'IncludeTies' is false, then the function returns the  $K$  neighbors with the shortest edit distance, where  $K$  is the number of neighbors to find. In this case, the function outputs  $N$ -by- $K$  matrices, where  $N$  is the number of input words. To specify  $K$ , use the 'K' name-value pair argument.

If 'IncludeTies' is true, then the function also returns the neighbors whose distances are equal to the  $K$ th smallest distance in the output. In this case, the function outputs cell arrays of size  $N$ -by-1, where  $N$  is the number of input words. The elements of the cell arrays are vectors with at least  $K$  elements. The function sorts the neighbors in each vector in ascending order of distance.

Data Types: double | cell

## **d — Edit distances to neighbors**

matrix | cell array of vectors

Edit distances to neighbors, returned as a matrix or a cell array of vectors.

If 'IncludeTies' is `false`, then the function returns the  $K$  neighbors with the shortest edit distance, where  $K$  is the number of neighbors to find. In this case, the function outputs  $N$ -by- $K$  matrices, where  $N$  is the number of input words. To specify  $K$ , use the 'K' name-value pair argument.

If 'IncludeTies' is `true`, then the function also returns the neighbors whose distances are equal to the  $K$ th smallest distance in the output. In this case, the function outputs cell arrays of size  $N$ -by-1, where  $N$  is the number of input words. The elements of the cell arrays are vectors with at least  $K$  elements. The function sorts the neighbors in each vector in ascending order of distance.

Data Types: `double` | `cell`

## **See Also**

`editDistance` | `editDistanceSearcher` | `rangesearch` | `splitGraphemes` | `tokenizedDocument`

## **Topics**

“Correct Spelling Using Edit Distance Searchers”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

**Introduced in R2019a**

## ldaModel

Latent Dirichlet allocation (LDA) model

### Description

A latent Dirichlet allocation (LDA) model is a topic model which discovers underlying topics in a collection of documents and infers word probabilities in topics. If the model was fit using a bag-of-n-grams model, then the software treats the n-grams as individual words.

### Creation

Create an LDA model using the `fitlda` function.

### Properties

#### **NumTopics** — Number of topics

positive integer

Number of topics in the LDA model, specified as a positive integer.

#### **TopicConcentration** — Topic concentration

positive scalar

Topic concentration, specified as a positive scalar. The function sets the concentration per topic to `TopicConcentration/NumTopics`. For more information, see “Latent Dirichlet Allocation” on page 1-217.

#### **WordConcentration** — Word concentration

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar

Word concentration, specified as a nonnegative scalar. The software sets the concentration per word to `WordConcentration/numWords`, where `numWords` is the vocabulary size of the input documents. For more information, see “Latent Dirichlet Allocation” on page 1-217.



---

**CorpusTopicProbabilities** — Topic probabilities of input document set  
vector

Topic probabilities of input document set, specified as a vector. The corpus topic probabilities of an LDA model are the probabilities of observing each topic in the entire data set used to fit the LDA model. `CorpusTopicProbabilities` is a 1-by- $K$  vector where  $K$  is the number of topics. The  $k$ th entry of `CorpusTopicProbabilities` corresponds to the probability of observing topic  $k$ .

**DocumentTopicProbabilities** — Topic probabilities per input document  
matrix

Topic probabilities per input document, specified as a matrix. The document topic probabilities of an LDA model are the probabilities of observing each topic in each document used to fit the LDA model. `DocumentTopicProbabilities` is a  $D$ -by- $K$  matrix where  $D$  is the number of documents used to fit the LDA model, and  $K$  is the number of topics. The  $(d,k)$ th entry of `DocumentTopicProbabilities` corresponds to the probability of observing topic  $k$  in document  $d$ .

If any the topics have zero probability (`CorpusTopicProbabilities` contains zeros), then the corresponding columns of `DocumentTopicProbabilities` and `TopicWordProbabilities` are zeros.

The order of the rows in `DocumentTopicProbabilities` corresponds to the order of the documents in the training data.

**TopicWordProbabilities** — Word probabilities per topic  
matrix

Word probabilities per topic, specified as a matrix. The topic word probabilities of an LDA model are the probabilities of observing each word in each topic of the LDA model. `TopicWordProbabilities` is a  $V$ -by- $K$  matrix, where  $V$  is the number of words in Vocabulary and  $K$  is the number of topics. The  $(v,k)$ th entry of `TopicWordProbabilities` corresponds to the probability of observing word  $v$  in topic  $k$ .

If any the topics have zero probability (`CorpusTopicProbabilities` contains zeros), then the corresponding columns of `DocumentTopicProbabilities` and `TopicWordProbabilities` are zeros.

The order of the rows in `TopicWordProbabilities` corresponds to the order of the words in Vocabulary.

## **TopicOrder — Topic order**

'initial-fit-probability' (default) | 'unordered'

Topic order, specified as one of the following:

- 'initial-fit-probability' - Sort the topics by the corpus topic probabilities of the initial model fit. These probabilities are the `CorpusTopicProbabilities` property of the initial `ldaModel` object returned by `fitlda`. The `resume` function does not reorder the topics of the resulting `ldaModel` objects.
- 'unordered' - Do not order topics.

## **FitInfo — Information recorded when fitting LDA model**

struct

Information recorded when fitting LDA model, specified as a struct with the following fields:

- `TerminationCode` - Status of optimization upon exit
  - 0 - Iteration limit reached.
  - 1 - Tolerance on log-likelihood satisfied.
- `TerminationStatus` - Explanation of the returned termination code
- `NumIterations` - Number of iterations performed
- `NegativeLogLikelihood` - Negative log-likelihood for the data passed to `fitlda`
- `Perplexity` - Perplexity for the data passed to `fitlda`
- `Solver` - Name of the solver used
- `History` - Struct holding the optimization history
- `StochasticInfo` - Struct holding information for stochastic solvers

Data Types: struct

## **Vocabulary — List of words in the model**

string vector

List of words in the model, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: string

## Object Functions

logp	Document log-probabilities and goodness of fit of LDA model
predict	Predict top LDA topics of documents
resume	Resume fitting LDA model
topkeywords	Most important words in bag-of-words model or LDA topic
transform	Transform documents into lower-dimensional space
wordcloud	Create word cloud chart from text, bag-of-words model, bag-of-n-grams model, or LDA model

## Examples

### Fit LDA Model

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to 'default'.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
```

```
  bagOfWords with properties:
```

```
    Counts: [154x3092 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    NumWords: 3092  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with four topics.

```
numTopics = 4;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.278271 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	1.29		1.215e+03	1.000	0
1	0.03	1.0482e-02	1.128e+03	1.000	0
2	0.03	1.7190e-03	1.115e+03	1.000	0
3	0.03	4.3796e-04	1.118e+03	1.000	0
4	0.03	9.4193e-04	1.111e+03	1.000	0
5	0.04	3.7079e-04	1.108e+03	1.000	0
6	0.09	9.5777e-05	1.107e+03	1.000	0

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:
      NumTopics: 4
      WordConcentration: 1
      TopicConcentration: 1
      CorpusTopicProbabilities: [0.2500 0.2500 0.2500 0.2500]
      DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x4 double]
      TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x4 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
      TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
      FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Visualize the topics using word clouds.

```
figure
for topicIdx = 1:4
    subplot(2,2,topicIdx)
    wordcloud(mdl,topicIdx);
    title("Topic: " + topicIdx)
end
```

Topic: 1



Topic: 2



Topic: 3



Topic: 4



### Highest Probability Words of LDA Topic

Create a table of the words with highest probability of an LDA topic.

To reproduce the results, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To suppress verbose output, set 'Verbose' to 0.

```
numTopics = 20;  
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

Find the top 20 words of the first topic.

```
k = 20;  
topicIdx = 1;  
tbl = topkwords(mdl,k,topicIdx)
```

```
tbl=20x2 table  
      Word      Score  
-----  
"eyes"      0.11155  
"beauty"    0.05777  
"hath"      0.055778  
"still"     0.049801  
"true"      0.043825  
"mine"      0.033865  
"find"      0.031873  
"black"     0.025897  
"look"      0.023905  
"tis"       0.023905  
"kind"      0.021913  
"seen"      0.021913  
"found"     0.017929  
"sin"       0.015937  
"three"     0.013945  
"golden"    0.0099608  
      ⋮
```

Find the top 20 words of the first topic and use inverse mean scaling on the scores.

```
tbl = topkwords(mdl,k,topicIdx,'Scaling','inversemean')
```

```
tbl=20x2 table
  Word      Score
-----
"eyes"     1.2718
"beauty"   0.59022
"hath"     0.5692
"still"    0.50269
"true"     0.43719
"mine"     0.32764
"find"     0.32544
"black"    0.25931
"tis"      0.23755
"look"     0.22519
"kind"     0.21594
"seen"     0.21594
"found"    0.17326
"sin"      0.15223
"three"    0.13143
"golden"   0.090698
  :
```

Create a word cloud using the scaled scores as the size data.

```
figure
wordcloud(tbl.Word,tbl.Score);
```



### Document Topic Probabilities of LDA Model

Get the document topic probabilities (also known as topic mixtures) of the documents used to fit an LDA model.

To reproduce the results, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.



```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
```

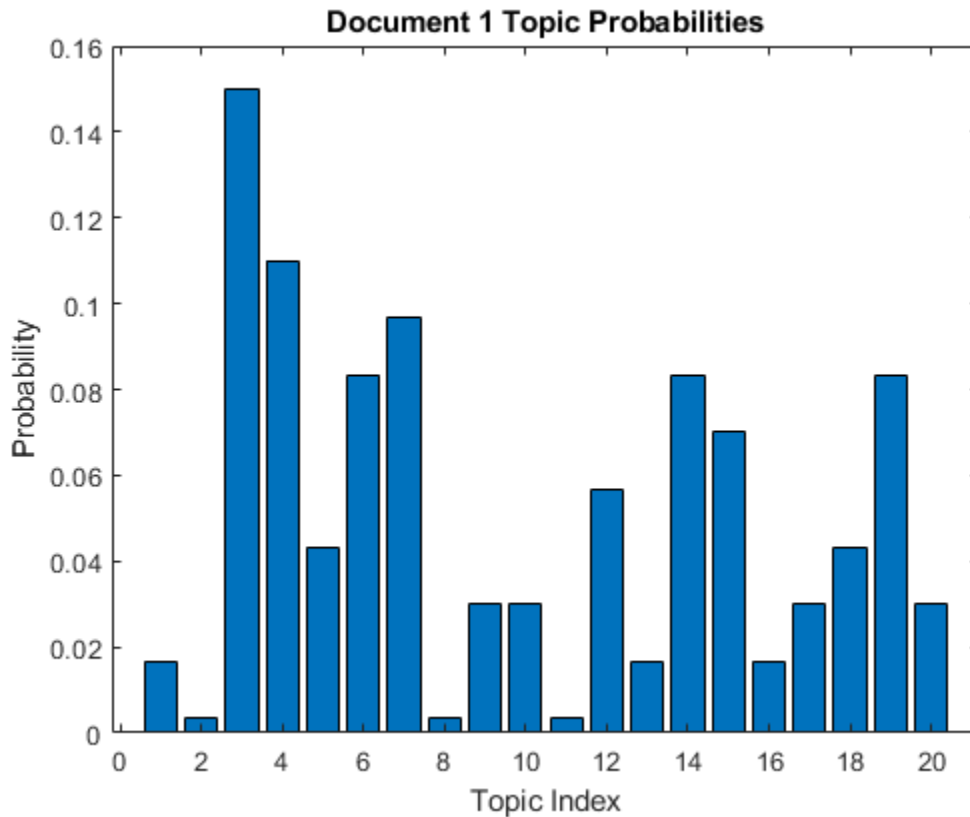
Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To suppress verbose output, set 'Verbose' to 0.

```
numTopics = 20;  
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0)
```

```
mdl =  
  LdaModel with properties:  
      NumTopics: 20  
      WordConcentration: 1  
      TopicConcentration: 5  
      CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]  
      DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]  
      TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
      TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'  
      FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

View the topic probabilities of the first document in the training data.

```
topicMixtures = mdl.DocumentTopicProbabilities;  
figure  
bar(topicMixtures(1,:))  
title("Document 1 Topic Probabilities")  
xlabel("Topic Index")  
ylabel("Probability")
```



### **Predict Top LDA Topics of Documents**

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);
```

```
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics.

```
numTopics = 20;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.170598 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.68		1.159e+03	5.000	0
1	0.50	5.4884e-02	8.028e+02	5.000	0
2	0.43	4.7400e-03	7.778e+02	5.000	0
3	0.42	3.4597e-03	7.602e+02	5.000	0
4	0.79	3.4662e-03	7.430e+02	5.000	0
5	0.31	2.9259e-03	7.288e+02	5.000	0
6	0.37	6.4180e-05	7.291e+02	5.000	0

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:

      NumTopics: 20
  WordConcentration: 1
  TopicConcentration: 5
  CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]
  DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]
  TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]
```

```
Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Predict the top topics for an array of new documents.

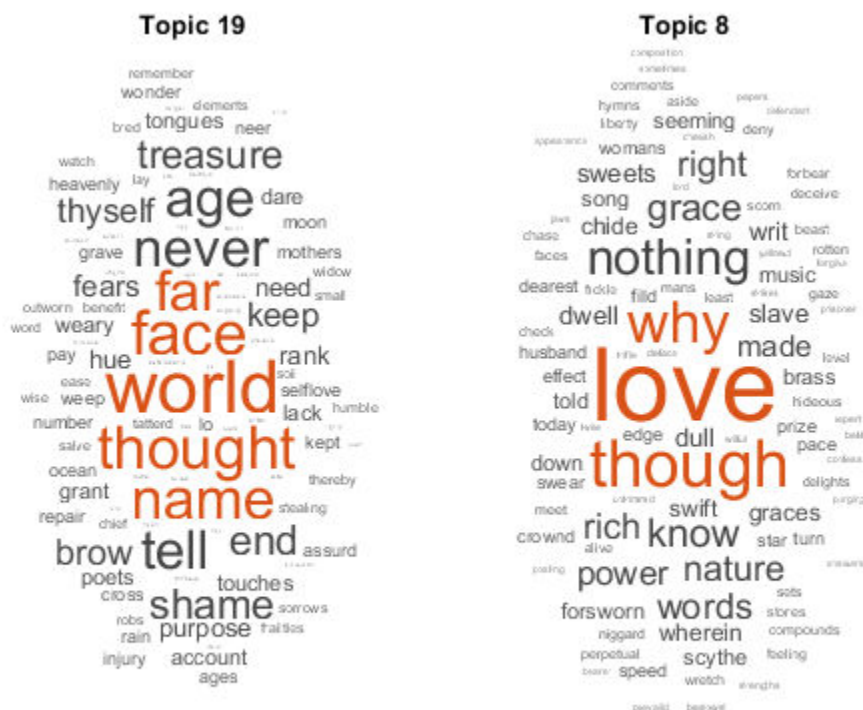
```
newDocuments = tokenizedDocument([
    "what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell as sweet."
    "if music be the food of love, play on."]);
topicIdx = predict mdl, newDocuments)
```

```
topicIdx = 2x1
```

```
19
 8
```

Visualize the predicted topics using word clouds.

```
figure
subplot(1,2,1)
wordcloud mdl, topicIdx(1);
title("Topic " + topicIdx(1))
subplot(1,2,2)
wordcloud mdl, topicIdx(2);
title("Topic " + topicIdx(2))
```



## More About

### Latent Dirichlet Allocation

A *latent Dirichlet allocation* (LDA) model is a document topic model which discovers underlying topics in a collection of documents and infers word probabilities in topics. LDA models a collection of  $D$  documents as topic mixtures  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_D$ , over  $K$  topics characterized by vectors of word probabilities  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$ . The model assumes that the topic mixtures  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_D$ , and the topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  follow a Dirichlet distribution with concentration parameters  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  respectively.

The topic mixtures  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_D$  are probability vectors of length  $K$ , where  $K$  is the number of topics. The entry  $\theta_{di}$  is the probability of topic  $i$  appearing in the  $d$ th document. The topic mixtures correspond to the rows of the `DocumentTopicProbabilities` property of the `LdaModel` object.

The topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  are probability vectors of length  $V$ , where  $V$  is the number of words in the vocabulary. The entry  $\varphi_{iv}$  corresponds to the probability of the  $v$ th word of the vocabulary appearing in the  $i$ th topic. The topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  correspond to the columns of the `TopicWordProbabilities` property of the `LdaModel` object.

Given the topics  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_K$  and Dirichlet prior  $\alpha$  on the topic mixtures, LDA assumes the following generative process for a document:

- 1** Sample a topic mixture  $\theta \sim \text{Dirichlet}(\alpha)$ . The random variable  $\theta$  is a probability vector of length  $K$ , where  $K$  is the number of topics.
- 2** For each word in the document:
  - a** Sample a topic index  $z \sim \text{Categorical}(\theta)$ . The random variable  $z$  is an integer from 1 through  $K$ , where  $K$  is the number of topics.
  - b** Sample a word  $w \sim \text{Categorical}(\varphi_z)$ . The random variable  $w$  is an integer from 1 through  $V$ , where  $V$  is the number of words in the vocabulary, and represents the corresponding word in the vocabulary.

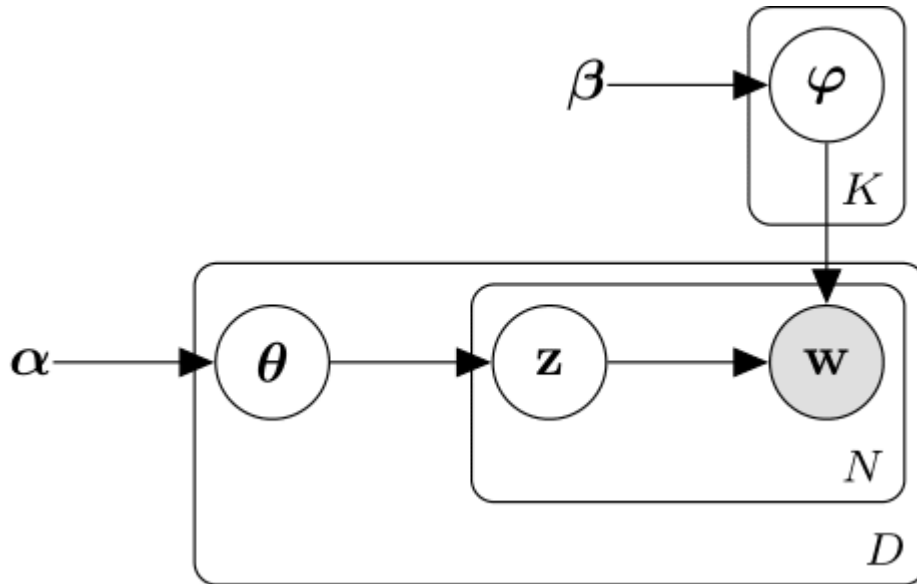
Under this generative process, the joint distribution of a document with words  $w_1, \dots, w_N$ , with topic mixture  $\theta$ , and with topic indices  $z_1, \dots, z_N$  is given by

$$p(\theta, z, w \mid \alpha, \varphi) = p(\theta \mid \alpha) \prod_{n=1}^N p(z_n \mid \theta) p(w_n \mid z_n, \varphi),$$

where  $N$  is the number of words in the document. Summing the joint distribution over  $z$  and then integrating over  $\theta$  yields the marginal distribution of a document  $w$ :

$$p(w \mid \alpha, \varphi) = \int_{\theta} p(\theta \mid \alpha) \prod_{n=1}^N \sum_{z_n} p(z_n \mid \theta) p(w_n \mid z_n, \varphi) d\theta.$$

The following diagram illustrates the LDA model as a probabilistic graphical model. Shaded nodes are observed variables, unshaded nodes are latent variables, nodes without outlines are the model parameters. The arrows highlight dependencies between random variables and the plates indicate repeated nodes.



## Dirichlet Distribution

The *Dirichlet distribution* is a continuous generalization of the multinomial distribution. Given the number of categories  $K \geq 2$ , and concentration parameter  $\alpha$ , where  $\alpha$  is a vector of positive reals of length  $K$ , the probability density function of the Dirichlet distribution is given by

$$p(\theta | \alpha) = \frac{1}{B(\alpha)} \prod_{i=1}^K \theta_i^{\alpha_i - 1},$$

where  $B$  denotes the multivariate Beta function given by

$$B(\alpha) = \frac{\prod_{i=1}^K \Gamma(\alpha_i)}{\Gamma\left(\sum_{i=1}^K \alpha_i\right)}.$$

A special case of the Dirichlet distribution is the *symmetric Dirichlet distribution*. The symmetric Dirichlet distribution is characterized by the concentration parameter  $\alpha$ , where all the elements of  $\alpha$  are the same.

### See Also

`bagOfWords` | `fitlda` | `logp` | `lsaModel` | `predict` | `resume` | `topkeywords` | `transform` | `wordcloud`

### Topics

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”  
“Choose Number of Topics for LDA Model”  
“Compare LDA Solvers”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”  
“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

**Introduced in R2017b**



# IsaModel

Latent semantic analysis (LSA) model

## Description

A latent semantic analysis (LSA) model discovers relationships between documents and the words that they contain. An LSA model is a dimensionality reduction tool useful for running low-dimensional statistical models on high-dimensional word counts. If the model was fit using a bag-of-n-grams model, then the software treats the n-grams as individual words.

## Creation

Create an LSA model using the `fitlsa` function.

## Properties

### **NumComponents** — Number of components

*nonnegative integer*

Number of components, specified as a nonnegative integer. The number of components is the dimensionality of the result vectors. Changing the value of `NumComponents` changes the length of the resulting vectors, without influencing the initial values. You can only set `NumComponents` to be less than or equal to the number of components used to fit the LSA model.

Example: 100

### **FeatureStrengthExponent** — Exponent scaling feature component strengths

*nonnegative scalar*

Exponent scaling feature component strengths for the `DocumentScores` and `WordScores` properties, and the `transform` function, specified as a nonnegative scalar. The LSA model scales the properties by their singular values (feature strengths), with an exponent of `FeatureStrengthExponent/2`.

Example: 2.5

## **ComponentWeights — Component weights**

numeric vector

Component weights, specified as a numeric vector. The component weights of an LSA model are the singular values, squared. `ComponentWeights` is a 1-by-`NumComponents` vector where the  $j$ th entry corresponds to the weight of component  $j$ . The components are ordered by decreasing weights. You can use the weights to estimate the importance of components.

## **DocumentScores — Score vectors per input document**

matrix

Score vectors per input document, specified as a matrix. The document scores of an LSA model are the score vectors in lower dimensional space of each document used to fit the LSA model. `DocumentScores` is a  $D$ -by-`NumComponents` matrix where  $D$  is the number of documents used to fit the LSA model. The  $(i,j)$ th entry of `DocumentScores` corresponds to the score of component  $j$  in document  $i$ .

## **WordScores — Word scores per component**

matrix

Word scores per component, specified as a matrix. The word scores of an LSA model are the scores of each word in each component of the LSA model. `WordScores` is a  $V$ -by-`NumComponents` matrix where  $V$  is the number of words in `Vocabulary`. The  $(v,j)$ th entry of `WordScores` corresponds to the score of word  $v$  in component  $j$ .

## **Vocabulary — Unique words in model**

string vector

Unique words in the model, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: `string`

## **Object Functions**

`transform` Transform documents into lower-dimensional space

## **Examples**

## Fit LSA Model

Fit a Latent Semantic Analysis model to a collection of documents.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
    bagOfWords with properties:
        Counts: [154x3092 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
        NumWords: 3092
        NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LSA model with 20 components.

```
numComponents = 20;
mdl = fitlsa(bag,numComponents)

mdl =
    lsaModel with properties:
        NumComponents: 20
        ComponentWeights: [1x20 double]
        DocumentScores: [154x20 double]
        WordScores: [3092x20 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
        FeatureStrengthExponent: 2
```

Transform new documents into lower dimensional space using the LSA model.

```
newDocuments = tokenizedDocument([
    "what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell as sweet."
    "if music be the food of love, play on."]);
dscores = transform mdl, newDocuments)

dscores = 2x20

    0.1338    0.1623    0.1680   -0.0541   -0.2464   -0.0134    0.2604   -0.0205    0.1
    0.2547    0.5576   -0.0095    0.5660   -0.0643   -0.1236   -0.0082    0.0522   -0.0
```

### Calculate Document Similarity

Create a bag-of-words model from some text data.

```
str = [
    "I enjoy ham, eggs and bacon for breakfast."
    "I sometimes skip breakfast."
    "I eat eggs and ham for dinner."
];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
```

Fit an LSA model with two components. Set the feature strength exponent to 0.5.

```
numComponents = 2;
exponent = 0.5;
mdl = fitlsa(bag, numComponents, ...
    'FeatureStrengthExponent', exponent)

mdl =
    lsaModel with properties:

        NumComponents: 2
        ComponentWeights: [16.2268 4.0000]
        DocumentScores: [3x2 double]
        WordScores: [14x2 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x14 string]
        FeatureStrengthExponent: 0.5000
```

Calculate the cosine distance between the documents score vectors using `pdist`. View the distances in a matrix `D` using `squareform`.  $D(i, j)$  denotes the distance between document  $i$  and  $j$ .

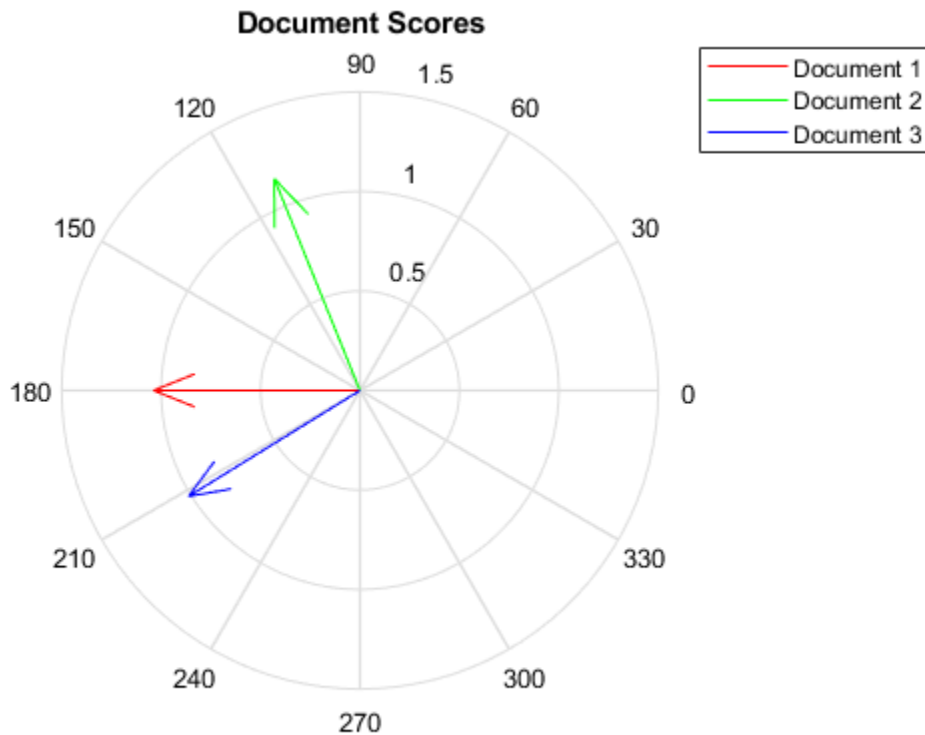
```
dscores = mdl.DocumentScores;  
distances = pdist(dscores, 'cosine');  
D = squareform(distances)
```

```
D = 3×3
```

```
    0    0.6244    0.1489  
0.6244    0    1.1670  
0.1489    1.1670    0
```

Visualize the similarity between documents by plotting the document score vectors in a compass plot.

```
figure  
compass(dscores(1,1),dscores(1,2),'red')  
hold on  
compass(dscores(2,1),dscores(2,2),'green')  
compass(dscores(3,1),dscores(3,2),'blue')  
hold off  
title("Document Scores")  
legend(["Document 1" "Document 2" "Document 3"],'Location','bestoutside')
```



## See Also

`bagOfWords` | `fitLsa` | `ldaModel` | `lsaModel` | `transform`

## Topics

- “Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”
- “Choose Number of Topics for LDA Model”
- “Compare LDA Solvers”
- “Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”
- “Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

**Introduced in R2017b**

## logp

Document log-probabilities and goodness of fit of LDA model

### Syntax

```
logProb = logp(ldaMdl,documents)
logProb = logp(ldaMdl,counts)
logProb = logp(ldaMdl,bag)
[logProb,ppl] = logp(____)
____ = logp(____,Name,Value)
```

### Description

`logProb = logp(ldaMdl,documents)` returns the log-probabilities of documents under the LDA model `ldaMdl`.

`logProb = logp(ldaMdl,counts)` returns the log-probabilities of the documents represented by the matrix of word counts `counts`.

`logProb = logp(ldaMdl,bag)` returns the log-probabilities of the documents represented by a bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model.

`[logProb,ppl] = logp(____)` returns the perplexity computed from the log-probabilities.

`____ = logp(____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Calculate Document Log-Probabilities

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to `'default'`.



```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
```

```
  bagOfWords with properties:
```

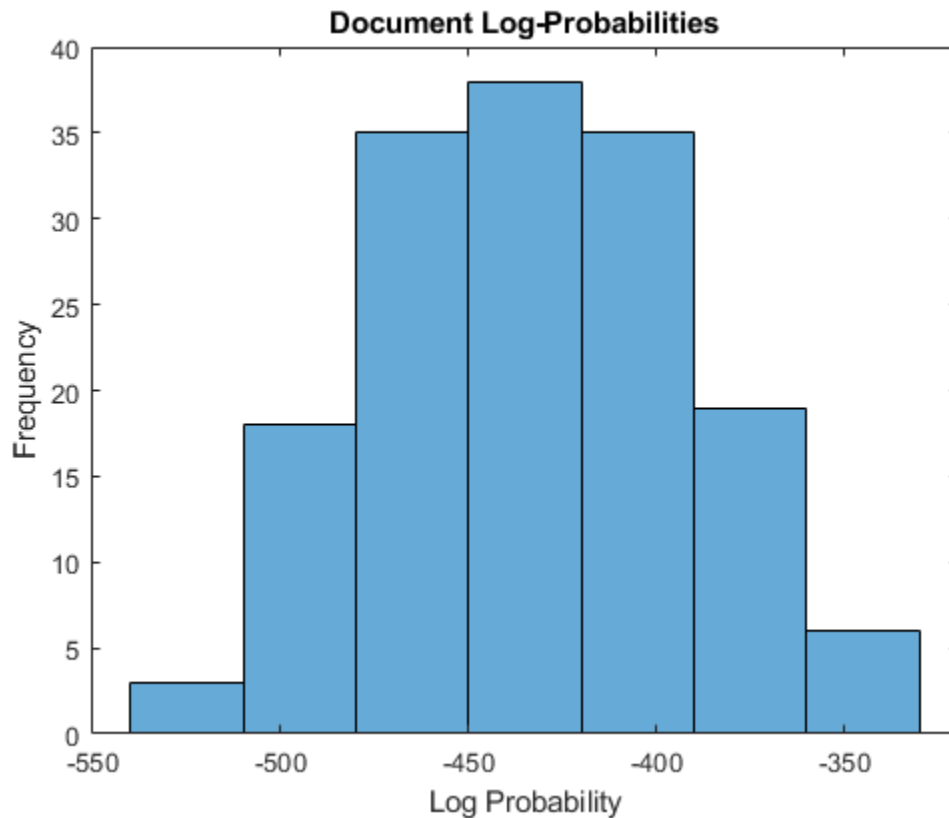
```
    Counts: [154x3092 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    NumWords: 3092  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To suppress verbose output, set `'Verbose'` to 0.

```
numTopics = 20;  
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

Compute the document log-probabilities of the training documents and show them in a histogram.

```
logProbabilities = logp(mdl,documents);  
figure  
histogram(logProbabilities)  
xlabel("Log Probability")  
ylabel("Frequency")  
title("Document Log-Probabilities")
```



Identify the three documents with the lowest log-probability. A low log-probability may suggest that the document may be an outlier.

```
[~,idx] = sort(logProbabilities);  
idx(1:3)
```

```
ans = 3×1
```

```
146  
19  
65
```

```
documents(idx(1:3))
```

```
ans =
  3x1 tokenizedDocument:

    76 tokens: poor soul centre sinful earth sinful earth rebel powers array why dost t
    76 tokens: devouring time blunt thou lions paws make earth devour own sweet brood p
    73 tokens: brass nor stone nor earth nor boundless sea sad mortality oersways power
```

### Calculate Document Log-Probabilities from Word Count Matrix

Load the example data. `sonnetsCounts.mat` contains a matrix of word counts and a corresponding vocabulary of preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets.

```
load sonnetsCounts.mat
size(counts)
```

```
ans = 1x2

    154    3092
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics.

```
numTopics = 20;
mdl = fitlda(counts,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.0200969 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iter., s	Relative Delta log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentr.	Concentr. iterations
0	0.00	Inf	1.158e+03	5.000	0
1	0.03	5.6879e-02	7.922e+02	5.000	0
2	0.03	2.3789e-03	7.797e+02	5.000	0
3	0.03	6.1553e-03	7.486e+02	5.000	0
4	0.03	1.2765e-03	7.423e+02	5.000	0
5	0.03	2.2275e-03	7.315e+02	5.000	0
6	0.03	2.6880e-03	7.187e+02	5.000	0
7	0.03	9.0387e-04	7.144e+02	5.000	0
8	0.03	2.0617e-03	7.048e+02	5.000	0
9	0.03	6.7090e-04	7.017e+02	5.000	0
10	0.02	3.6365e-04	7.001e+02	5.000	0

11	0.03	1.5275e-03	6.931e+02	14.724	25
12	0.03	9.7639e-03	7.393e+02	17.171	19
13	0.03	4.3602e-03	7.610e+02	18.963	18
14	0.03	1.3477e-03	7.678e+02	19.504	11
15	0.03	1.8744e-03	7.774e+02	20.154	12
16	0.03	1.1713e-03	7.714e+02	19.914	7
17	0.03	2.4305e-04	7.727e+02	19.909	4
18	0.03	6.8699e-04	7.691e+02	19.831	4
19	0.03	5.3757e-04	7.719e+02	20.293	11
20	0.03	8.8519e-05	7.714e+02	20.215	4

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:

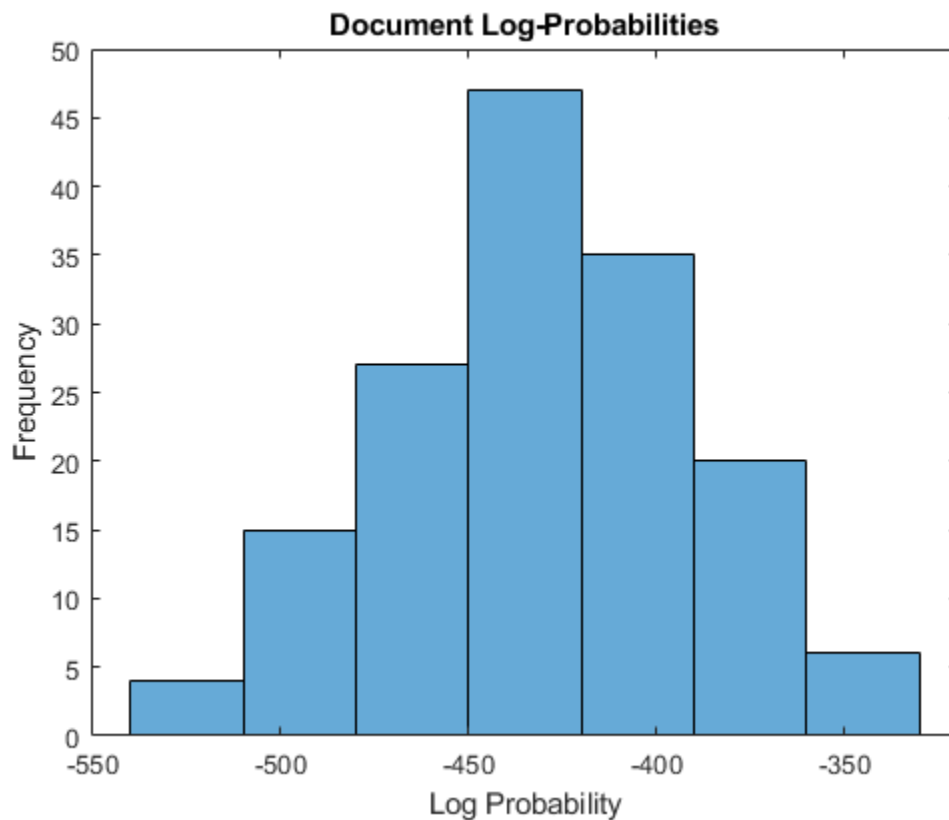
        NumTopics: 20
      WordConcentration: 1
    TopicConcentration: 20.2150
 CorpusTopicProbabilities: [0.0392 0.0865 0.0473 0.0299 0.0377 0.0400 0.0483 0.0575]
 DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]
   TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
          FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Compute the document log-probabilities of the training documents. Specify to draw 500 samples for each document.

```
numSamples = 500;
logProbabilities = logp(mdl,counts, ...
    'NumSamples',numSamples);
```

Show the document log-probabilities in a histogram.

```
figure
histogram(logProbabilities)
xlabel("Log Probability")
ylabel("Frequency")
title("Document Log-Probabilities")
```



Identify the indices of the three documents with the lowest log-probability.

```
[~,idx] = sort(logProbabilities);  
idx(1:3)
```

```
ans = 3×1
```

```
19  
146  
11
```

## Compare Goodness of Fit

Compare the goodness of fit for two LDA models by calculating the perplexity of a held-out test set of documents.

To reproduce the results, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Set aside 10% of the documents at random for testing.

```
numDocuments = numel(documents);  
cvp = cvpartition(numDocuments,'HoldOut',0.1);  
documentsTrain = documents(cvp.training);  
documentsTest = documents(cvp.test);
```

Create a bag-of-words model from the training documents.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documentsTrain)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
    Counts: [139x2909 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x2909 string]  
    NumWords: 2909  
  NumDocuments: 139
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics to the bag-of-words model. To suppress verbose output, set `'Verbose'` to 0.

```
numTopics = 20;  
mdl1 = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

View information about the model fit.

`mdl1.FitInfo`

```
ans = struct with fields:
    TerminationCode: 1
    TerminationStatus: "Relative tolerance on log-likelihood satisfied."
    NumIterations: 26
    NegativeLogLikelihood: 5.6915e+04
    Perplexity: 742.7118
    Solver: "cgs"
    History: [1x1 struct]
```

Compute the perplexity of the held-out test set.

```
[~,ppl1] = logp(mdl1,documentsTest)
```

```
ppl1 = 781.6078
```

Fit an LDA model with 40 topics to the bag-of-words model.

```
numTopics = 40;
mdl2 = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

View information about the model fit.

`mdl2.FitInfo`

```
ans = struct with fields:
    TerminationCode: 1
    TerminationStatus: "Relative tolerance on log-likelihood satisfied."
    NumIterations: 37
    NegativeLogLikelihood: 5.4466e+04
    Perplexity: 558.8685
    Solver: "cgs"
    History: [1x1 struct]
```

Compute the perplexity of the held-out test set.

```
[~,ppl2] = logp(mdl2,documentsTest)
```

```
ppl2 = 808.6602
```

A lower perplexity suggests that the model may be better fit to the held-out test data.

## Input Arguments

### **ldaMdL — Input LDA model**

`LdaModel` object

Input LDA model, specified as an `LdaModel` object.

### **documents — Input documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If `documents` is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row vector representing a single document, where each element is a word.

### **bag — Input model**

`bagOfWords` object | `bagOfNgrams` object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

### **counts — Frequency counts of words**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. If you specify 'DocumentsIn' to be 'rows', then the value `counts(i,j)` corresponds to the number of times the *j*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *i*th document. Otherwise, the value `counts(i,j)` corresponds to the number of times the *i*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *j*th document.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: 'NumSamples', 500 specifies to draw 500 samples for each document



**DocumentsIn — Orientation of documents**`'rows' (default) | 'columns'`

Orientation of documents in the word count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'DocumentsIn' and one of the following:

- 'rows' - Input is a matrix of word counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- 'columns' - Input is a transposed matrix of word counts with columns corresponding to documents.

This option only applies if you specify the input documents as a matrix of word counts.

---

**Note** If you orient your word count matrix so that documents correspond to columns and specify 'DocumentsIn', 'columns', then you might experience a significant reduction in optimization-execution time.

---

**NumSamples — Number of samples to draw**`1000 (default) | positive integer`

Number of samples to draw for each document, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'NumSamples' and a positive integer.

Example: 'NumSamples',500

## Output Arguments

**LogProb — Log-probabilities**`numeric vector`

Log-probabilities of the documents under the LDA model, returned as a numeric vector.

**ppl — Perplexity**`positive scalar`

Perplexity of the documents calculated from the log-probabilities, returned as a positive scalar.

## Algorithms

The `logp` uses the *iterated pseudo-count* method described in

## References

- [1] Wallach, Hanna M., Iain Murray, Ruslan Salakhutdinov, and David Mimno. "Evaluation methods for topic models." In *Proceedings of the 26th annual international conference on machine learning*, pp. 1105-1112. ACM, 2009. Harvard

## See Also

`bagOfWords` | `fitlda` | `ldaModel` | `predict` | `transform` | `wordcloud`

## Topics

"Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models"

"Prepare Text Data for Analysis"

"Extract Text Data from Files"

**Introduced in R2017b**

# lower

Convert documents to lowercase

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = lower(documents)
```

## Description

`newDocuments = lower(documents)` converts each uppercase character in the input documents to the corresponding lowercase character, and leaves all other characters unchanged.

## Examples

### Convert Documents to Lowercase

Convert all uppercase characters in an array of documents to lowercase.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
  "An Example of a Short Sentence"
  "A Second Short Sentence"])

documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: An Example of a Short Sentence
    4 tokens: A Second Short Sentence

newDocuments = lower(documents)

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

6 tokens: an example of a short sentence  
4 tokens: a second short sentence

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `erasePunctuation` | `eraseTags` | `eraseURLs` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# mecabOptions

Options for MeCab tokenization

## Description

A `mecabOptions` object specifies additional options for tokenizing Japanese and Korean text.

To tokenize using the specified MeCab tokenization options, use the 'TokenizeMethod' option of `tokenizedDocument`.

## Creation

## Syntax

```
options = mecabOptions  
options = mecabOptions(Name,Value)
```

## Description

`options = mecabOptions` creates a MeCab tokenization option set with the default values for tokenizing Japanese.

`options = mecabOptions(Name,Value)` additionally sets additional “Properties” on page 1-241 using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Properties

### Model — Path to trained model

string scalar | character vector

Path to trained model (MeCab dictionary), specified as a string scalar or a character vector.

The default value is a path to the internal dictionary for Japanese tokenization.

Example: "C:\myDict"

Data Types: char | string

## **UserModel — File containing model extension**

"" (default) | string scalar | character vector

File containing model extension (MeCab user dictionary .dic file), specified as a string scalar or a character vector.

Example: "C:\myFile.dic"

Data Types: char | string

## **LemmaExtractor — Function extracting lemma from MeCab reply**

@textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma (default) | function handle

Function extracting lemma from MeCab reply, specified as a function handle.

The function must have the form `lemmata = fun(words, info)`, where `words` is a string vector of tokens and `info` is a struct with the following fields:

- **Feature** - String vector of tokens of the same size as `words` containing the MeCab output lines in ChaSen format without the split tokens themselves.
- **PartOfSpeech** - Numerical code used inside the dictionary for the part-of-speech classification.

The output `lemmata` is a string array of the same size as `words` containing the extracted lemmata.

The default lemma extractor is the `textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma` function.

Data Types: function\_handle

## **POSExtractor — Function extracting part-of-speech information from MeCab reply**

@textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS (default) | function handle

Function extracting part-of-speech information from MeCab reply, specified as a function handle.

The function must have the form `posTags = fun(words, info)`, where `words` is a string vector of tokens and `info` is a struct with the following fields:

- **Feature** - String vector of tokens of the same size as `words` containing the MeCab output lines in ChaSen format without the split tokens themselves.
- **PartOfSpeech** - Numerical code used inside the dictionary for the part-of-speech classification.

The output `posTags` is a categorical array of the same size as `words` containing the extracted part-of-speech tags from the following categories:

- adjective
- adposition
- adverb
- auxiliary-verb
- coord-conjunction
- determiner
- interjection
- noun
- numeral
- pronoun
- proper-noun
- punctuation
- symbol
- verb
- other

The default part-of-speech information extractor is the `textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS` function.

Data Types: `function_handle`

**NERExtractor** — **Function extracting named entity information from MeCab reply**  
`@textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER` (default) | `function handle`

Function extracting named entity information from MeCab reply, specified as a function handle.

The function must have the form `entities = fun(words, info)`, where `words` is a string vector of tokens and `info` is a struct with the following fields:

- **Feature** - String vector of tokens of the same size as `words` containing the MeCab output lines in ChaSen format without the split tokens themselves.
- **PartOfSpeech** - Numerical code used inside the dictionary for the part-of-speech classification.

The output `entities` is a categorical array of the same size as `words` containing the extracted entities from the following categories:

- `non-entity`
- `person`
- `organization`
- `location`
- `other`

The default part-of-speech information extractor is the `textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER` function.

Data Types: `function_handle`

## Examples

### Create MeCab Options Object

Create a `mecabOptions` object containing the default options for Japanese tokenization.

```
options = mecabOptions
```

```
options =
```

```
    MecabOptions with properties:
```

```
        Model: "C:\Program Files\MATLAB\R2019b\sys\share\dict-ipadic"  
      UserModel: ""  
    LemmaExtractor: @textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma  
      POSExtractor: @textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS  
      NERExtractor: @textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER
```

### Specify MeCab User Dictionary for Tokenization

Tokenize Japanese text using custom MeCab options.



Create a string array of Japanese text.

```
str = [
    "恋に悩み、苦しむ。"
    "恋の悩みで苦しむ。"
    "空に星が輝き、瞬いている。"
    "空の星が輝きを増している。"];
```

Create a mecabOptions object and specify a user model as a .dic file using the 'UserModel' option.

```
options = mecabOptions('UserModel','myFile.dic')
```

```
options =
```

```
MecabOptions with properties:
```

```
    Model: "C:\Program Files\MATLAB\R2019b\sys\share\dict-ipadic"
    UserModel: "myFile.dic"
    LemmaExtractor: @textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma
    POSExtractor: @textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS
    NERExtractor: @textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER
```

Tokenize the text using the specified options using the 'TokenizeMethod' option.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument(str,'TokenizeMethod',options)
```

```
documents =
```

```
4x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
6 tokens: 恋 に 悩 み 、 苦 し む 。
6 tokens: 恋 の 悩 み で 苦 し む 。
10 tokens: 空 に 星 が 輝 き 、 瞬 い て い る 。
10 tokens: 空 の 星 が 輝 き を 増 し て い る 。
```

## See Also

[addEntityDetails](#) | [addLanguageDetails](#) | [addLemmaDetails](#) | [addPartOfSpeechDetails](#) | [corpusLanguage](#) | [normalizeWords](#) | [tokenDetails](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

“Japanese Language Support”  
 “Analyze Japanese Text Data”  
 “Language Considerations”  
 “Language-Independent Features”

**Introduced in R2019b**

# normalizeWords

Stem or lemmatize words

## Syntax

```
updatedDocuments = normalizeWords(documents)
```

```
updatedWords = normalizeWords(words)
```

```
updatedWords = normalizeWords(words, 'Language', language)
```

```
___ = normalizeWords( ___, 'Style', style)
```

## Description

Use `normalizeWords` to reduce words to a root form. To *lemmatize* English words (reduce them to their dictionary forms), set the 'Style' option to 'lemma'.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`updatedDocuments = normalizeWords(documents)` reduces the words in `documents` to a root form. For English and German text, the function, by default, stems the words using the Porter stemmer for English and German text respectively. For Japanese and Korean text, the function, by default, lemmatizes the words using the MeCab tokenizer.

`updatedWords = normalizeWords(words)` reduces each word in the string array `words` to a root form.

`updatedWords = normalizeWords(words, 'Language', language)` reduces the words and also specifies the word language.

`___ = normalizeWords( ___, 'Style', style)` also specifies normalization style. For example, `normalizeWords(documents, 'Style', 'lemma')` lemmatizes the words in the input documents.

## Examples

### Stem Words in Documents

Stem the words in a document array using the Porter stemmer.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "a strongly worded collection of words"
    "another collection of words"]);
newDocuments = normalizeWords(documents)

newDocuments =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: a strongli word collect of word
    4 tokens: anoth collect of word
```

### Stem Words in String Array

Stem the words in a string array using the Porter stemmer. Each element of the string array must be a single word.

```
words = ["a" "strongly" "worded" "collection" "of" "words"];
newWords = normalizeWords(words)

newWords = 1x6 string array
    "a"    "strongli"    "word"    "collect"    "of"    "word"
```

### Lemmatize Words in Documents

Lemmatize the words in a document array.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "I am building a house."
    "The building has two floors."]);
newDocuments = normalizeWords(documents, 'Style', 'lemma')
```

```
newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: i be build a house .
    6 tokens: the build have two floor .
```

To improve the lemmatization, first add part-of-speech details to the documents using the `addPartOfSpeechDetails` function. For example, if the documents contain part-of-speech details, then `normalizeWords` reduces the only verb "building" and not the noun "building".

```
documents = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents);
newDocuments = normalizeWords(documents, 'Style', 'lemma')

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: i be build a house .
    6 tokens: the building have two floor .
```

## Lemmatize Japanese Text

Tokenize Japanese text using the `tokenizedDocument` function. The function automatically detects Japanese text.

```
str = [
  "空に星が輝き、瞬いている。"
  "空の星が輝きを増している。"
  "駅までは遠くて、歩けない。"
  "遠くの駅まで歩けない。"];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Lemmatize the tokens using `normalizeWords`.

```
documents = normalizeWords(documents)

documents =
  4x1 tokenizedDocument:

    10 tokens: 空 に 星 が 輝く 、 瞬く て いる 。
```

```
10 tokens: 空の星が輝きを増すている。
9 tokens: 駅までは遠くて、歩けるない。
7 tokens: 遠くの駅まで歩けるない。
```

### Stem German Text

Tokenize German text using the `tokenizedDocument` function. The function automatically detects German text.

```
str = [
    "Guten Morgen. Wie geht es dir?"
    "Heute wird ein guter Tag."];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Stem the tokens using `normalizeWords`.

```
documents = normalizeWords(documents)
```

```
documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    8 tokens: gut morg . wie geht es dir ?
    6 tokens: heut wird ein gut tag .
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

### **words** — Input words

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify `words` as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

### **style — Normalization style**

`'stem'` | `'lemma'`

Normalization style, specified as one of the following:

- `'stem'` - Stem words using the Porter stemmer. This option supports English and German text only. For English and German text, this value is the default.
- `'lemma'` - Extract the dictionary form of each word. This option supports English, Japanese, and Korean text only. If a word is not in the internal dictionary, then the function outputs the word unchanged. For English text, the output is lowercase. For Japanese and Korean text, this value is the default.

The function only normalizes tokens with type `'letters'` and `'other'`. For more information on token types, see `tokenDetails`.

---

**Tip** For English text, to improve lemmatization of words in documents, first add part-of-speech details using the `addPartOfSpeechDetails` function.

---

### **language — Word language**

`'en'` | `'de'`

Word language, specified as one of the following:

- `'en'` - English language
- `'de'` - German language

If you do not specify language, then the software detects the language automatically. To lemmatize Japanese or Korean text, use `tokenizedDocument` input.

Data Types: `char` | `string`

## **Output Arguments**

### **updatedDocuments — Updated documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Updated documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## **updatedWords — Updated words**

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Updated words, returned as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. `words` and `updatedWords` have the same data type.

## **Algorithms**

### **Language Details**

`tokenizedDocument` objects contain details about the tokens including language details. The language details of the input documents determine the behavior of `normalizeWords`. The `tokenizedDocument` function, by default, automatically detects the language of the input text. To specify the language details manually, use the 'Language' name-value pair argument of `tokenizedDocument`. To view the token details, use the `tokenDetails` function.

## **Compatibility Considerations**

### **normalizeWords skips complex tokens**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, for `tokenizedDocument` input, `normalizeWords` normalizes tokens with type 'letters' or 'other' only. This behavior prevents the function from affecting complex tokens such as URLs and email-addresses.

In previous versions, `normalizeWords` normalizes all tokens. To reproduce this behavior, use the command `updatedDocuments = docfun(@(str) normalizeWords(str),documents)`.

### **See Also**

`addLemmaDetails` | `addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `removeLongWords` | `removeShortWords` | `removeStopWords` | `removeWords` | `stopWords` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument`



## **Topics**

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Language Considerations”

“Japanese Language Support”

“German Language Support”

**Introduced in R2017b**

## plus, +

Append documents

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = documents1 + documents2  
newDocuments = plus(documents1,documents2)
```

## Description

`newDocuments = documents1 + documents2` appends the documents in `documents2` to the documents in `documents1`.

`newDocuments = plus(documents1,documents2)` is equivalent to `newDocuments = documents1 + documents2`.

## Examples

### Append Documents

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create arrays containing the first 5 and second 5 sonnets.

```
documents1 = documents(1:5)
```

```
documents1 =
  5x1 tokenizedDocument:

    70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
    71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
    65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
    71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys legac
    61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants s
```

```
documents2 = documents(6:10)
```

```
documents2 =
  5x1 tokenizedDocument:

    68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make sv
    64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappea
    70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j
    70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless
    69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

Append the second 5 sonnets to the first 5 sonnets.

```
newDocuments = documents1 + documents2
```

```
newDocuments =
  5x1 tokenizedDocument:

    138 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
    135 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys fie
    135 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fres
    141 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys leg
    130 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants s
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents1** — Input documents

array of tokenized documents

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array. `documents1` and `documents2` must be the same size.

**documents2 — Input documents**

array of tokenized documents

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array. `documents1` and `documents2` must be the same size.

## Output Arguments

**newDocuments — Output documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## See Also

`addPartOfSpeechDetails` | `addSentenceDetails` | `bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `docfun` | `eraseURLs` | `normalizeWords` | `replace` | `tokenDetails` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# predict

Predict top LDA topics of documents

## Syntax

```
topicIdx = predict(ldaMdl,documents)
topicIdx = predict(ldaMdl,bag)
topicIdx = predict(ldaMdl,counts)
[topicIdx,score] = predict(____)
____ = predict(____,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`topicIdx = predict(ldaMdl,documents)` returns the LDA topic indices with the largest probabilities for documents based on the LDA model `ldaMdl`.

`topicIdx = predict(ldaMdl,bag)` returns the LDA topic indices with the largest probabilities for the documents represented by a bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model.

`topicIdx = predict(ldaMdl,counts)` returns the LDA topic indices with the largest probabilities for the documents represented by a matrix of word counts.

`[topicIdx,score] = predict(____)` also returns a matrix of posterior probabilities score.

`____ = predict(____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Examples

### Predict Top LDA Topics of Documents

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to 'default'.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:
```

```
    Counts: [154x3092 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    NumWords: 3092  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics.

```
numTopics = 20;  
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.170598 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.68		1.159e+03	5.000	0
1	0.50	5.4884e-02	8.028e+02	5.000	0
2	0.43	4.7400e-03	7.778e+02	5.000	0
3	0.42	3.4597e-03	7.602e+02	5.000	0
4	0.79	3.4662e-03	7.430e+02	5.000	0
5	0.31	2.9259e-03	7.288e+02	5.000	0
6	0.37	6.4180e-05	7.291e+02	5.000	0

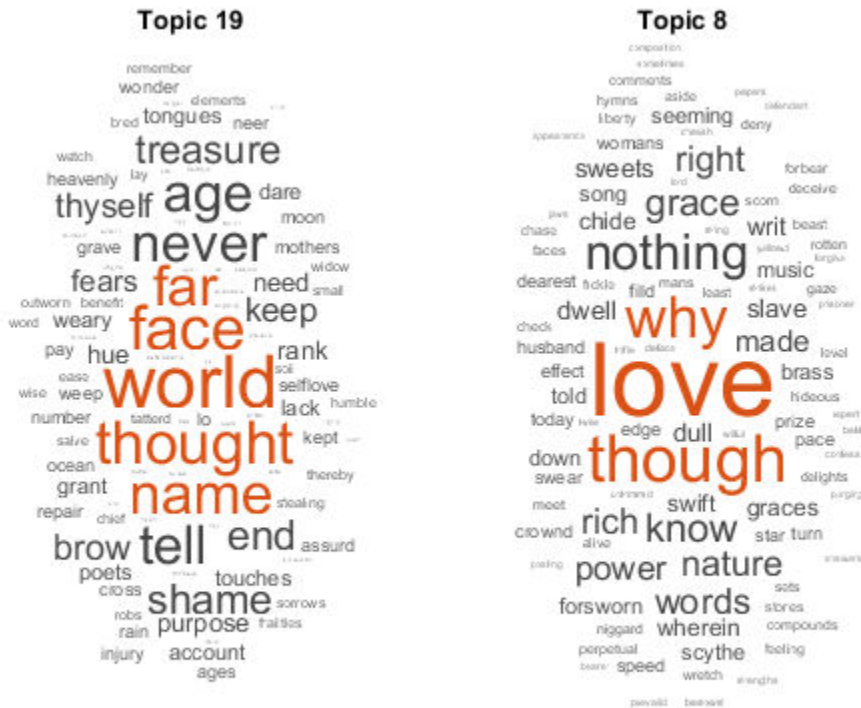
```
mdl =  
  ldaModel with properties:  
  
          NumTopics: 20  
      WordConcentration: 1  
      TopicConcentration: 5  
  CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]  
  DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]  
      TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
      TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'  
      FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Predict the top topics for an array of new documents.

```
newDocuments = tokenizedDocument([  
    "what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell as sweet."  
    "if music be the food of love, play on."]);  
topicIdx = predict(mdl,newDocuments)  
  
topicIdx = 2×1  
  
    19  
     8
```

Visualize the predicted topics using word clouds.

```
figure  
subplot(1,2,1)  
wordcloud(mdl,topicIdx(1));  
title("Topic " + topicIdx(1))  
subplot(1,2,2)  
wordcloud(mdl,topicIdx(2));  
title("Topic " + topicIdx(2))
```



**Predict Top LDA Topics of Word Count Matrix**

Load the example data. `sonnetsCounts.mat` contains a matrix of word counts and a corresponding vocabulary of preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets.

```
load sonnetsCounts.mat
size(counts)
```

ans = 1x2

154          3092



Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to 'default'.

```
rng('default')
numTopics = 20;
mdl = fitlda(counts,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.162451 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.18		1.159e+03	5.000	0
1	0.25	5.4884e-02	8.028e+02	5.000	0
2	0.16	4.7400e-03	7.778e+02	5.000	0
3	0.19	3.4597e-03	7.602e+02	5.000	0
4	0.11	3.4662e-03	7.430e+02	5.000	0
5	0.19	2.9259e-03	7.288e+02	5.000	0
6	0.15	6.4180e-05	7.291e+02	5.000	0

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:
      NumTopics: 20
      WordConcentration: 1
      TopicConcentration: 5
      CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]
      DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]
      TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
      TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
      FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Predict the top topics for the first 5 documents in counts.

```
topicIdx = predict(mdl,counts(1:5,:))
```

```
topicIdx = 5x1
```

```
3
15
19
```

3  
14

## Calculate Topic Prediction Scores

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:
```

```
    Counts: [154x3092 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    NumWords: 3092  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To suppress verbose output, set `'Verbose'` to 0.

```
numTopics = 20;  
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

Predict the top topics for a new document. Specify the iteration limit to be 200.

```
newDocument = tokenizedDocument("what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell  
iterationLimit = 200;
```

```
[topicIdx,scores] = predict mdl,newDocument, ...  
    'IterationLimit',iterationLimit)
```

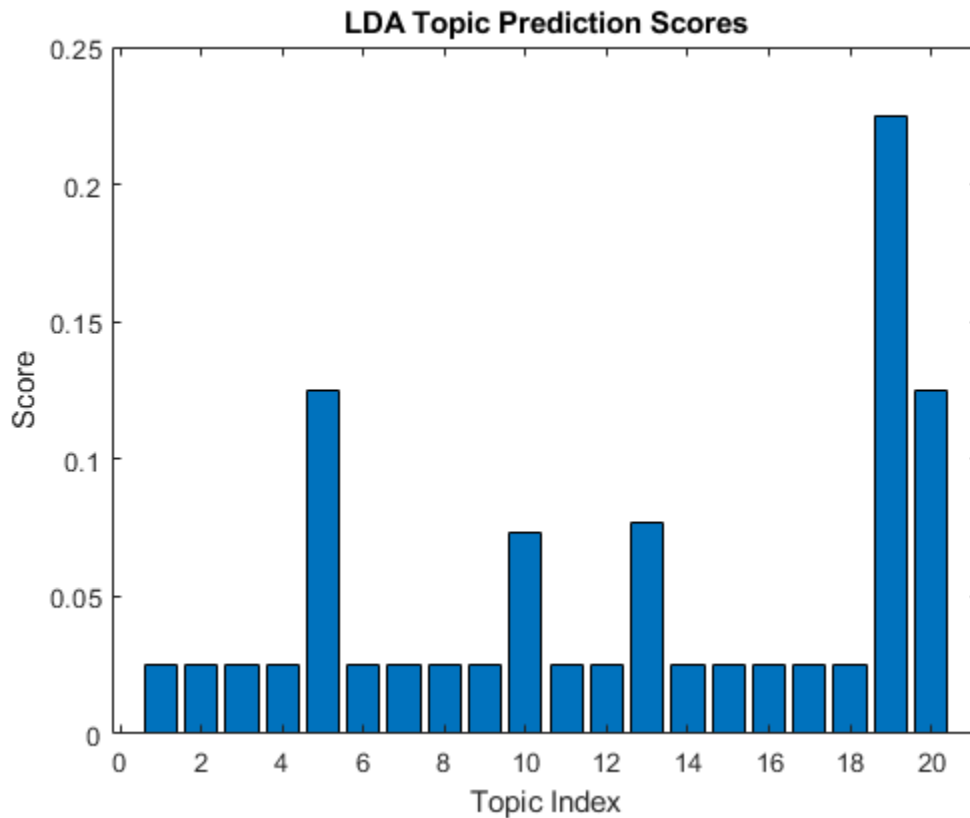
```
topicIdx = 19
```

```
scores = 1×20
```

```
    0.0250    0.0250    0.0250    0.0250    0.1250    0.0250    0.0250    0.0250    0.0250    0.0250
```

View the prediction scores in a bar chart.

```
figure  
bar(scores)  
title("LDA Topic Prediction Scores")  
xlabel("Topic Index")  
ylabel("Score")
```



## Input Arguments

### **ldaModel** — Input LDA model

`ldaModel` object

Input LDA model, specified as an `ldaModel` object.

### **documents** — Input documents

`tokenizedDocument` array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If `documents` is a `tokenizedDocument`, then it must be

a column vector. If `documents` is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row of the words of a single document.

---

**Tip** To ensure that the function does not discard useful information, you must first preprocess the input `documents` using the same steps used to preprocess the `documents` used to train the model.

---

### **bag — Input model**

`bagOfWords` object | `bagOfNgrams` object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

### **counts — Frequency counts of words**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. If you specify `'DocumentsIn'` to be `'rows'`, then the value `counts(i,j)` corresponds to the number of times the *j*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *i*th document. Otherwise, the value `counts(i,j)` corresponds to the number of times the *i*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *j*th document.

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1,Value1,...,NameN,ValueN`.

Example: `'IterationLimit',200` specifies the iteration limit to be 200.

### **DocumentsIn — Orientation of documents**

`'rows'` (default) | `'columns'`

Orientation of documents in the word count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DocumentsIn'` and one of the following:

- `'rows'` - Input is a matrix of word counts with rows corresponding to documents.

- `'columns'` - Input is a transposed matrix of word counts with columns corresponding to documents.

This option only applies if you specify the input documents as a matrix of word counts.

---

**Note** If you orient your word count matrix so that documents correspond to columns and specify `'DocumentsIn'`, `'columns'`, then you might experience a significant reduction in optimization-execution time.

---

### **IterationLimit — Maximum number of iterations**

100 (default) | positive integer

Maximum number of iterations, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'IterationLimit'` and a positive integer.

Example: `'IterationLimit',200`

### **LogLikelihoodTolerance — Relative tolerance on log-likelihood**

0.0001 (default) | positive scalar

Relative tolerance on log-likelihood, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'LogLikelihoodTolerance'` and a positive scalar. The optimization terminates when this tolerance is reached.

Example: `'LogLikelihoodTolerance',0.001`

## **Output Arguments**

### **topicIdx — Predicted topic indices**

vector of numeric indices

Predicted topic indices, returned as a vector of numeric indices.

### **score — Predicted topic probabilities**

matrix

Predicted topic probabilities, returned as a D-by-K matrix, where D is the number of input documents and K is the number of topics in the LDA model. `score(i,j)` is the probability that topic j appears in document i. Each row of `score` sums to one.

## See Also

`bagOfWords` | `fitLda` | `LdaModel` | `logp` | `transform` | `wordcloud`

## Topics

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Extract Text Data from Files”

**Introduced in R2017b**

## rangesearch

Find nearest neighbors by edit distance range

### Syntax

```
idx = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)
[idx,d] = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)
```

### Description

`idx = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)` finds all the words in `eds` that are within distance `maxDist` of the words in `words`.

`[idx,d] = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)` also returns the edit distances of the corresponding words.

### Examples

#### Find Nearest Neighbors in Range

Create an edit distance searcher and specify a maximum edit distance of 3.

```
vocabulary = ["MathWorks" "MATLAB" "Simulink" "text" "analytics" "analysis"];
maxDist = 3;
eds = editDistanceSearcher(vocabulary,maxDist);
```

Find the nearest words to "MALTAB" and "MatWorks" with edit distance less than or equal to 1.

```
words = ["MALTAB" "MatWorks" "analytcs"];
maxDist = 1;
idx = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)
```

```
idx=3x1 cell
      {1x0 double}
```



```
{[      1]}
{[      5]}
```

For "MALTAB", there are no words in the searcher within the specified range. For "MatWorks" and "analytics", there is one result. View the corresponding word for "MatWorks" using the returned index.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx{2})
```

```
nearestWords =
"MathWorks"
```

Find the nearest words to "MALTAB", "MatWorks", and "analytcs" with edit distance less than or equal to 3 and their corresponding edit distances.

```
words = ["MALTAB" "MatWorks" "analytcs"];
maxDist = 3;
[idx,d] = rangesearch(eds,words,maxDist)
```

```
idx=3x1 cell
{[      2]}
{[      1]}
{1x2 double}
```

```
d=3x1 cell
{[      2]}
{[      1]}
{1x2 double}
```

For both "MALTAB" and "MatWorks", there is one word in the searcher within the specified range. For "analytcs", there are two results. View the corresponding words for "analytcs" using the returned indices and their edit distances.

```
nearestWords = eds.Vocabulary(idx{3})
```

```
nearestWords = 1x2 string array
"analytics" "analysis"
```

```
d{3}
```

```
ans = 1x2
```

1 2

## Input Arguments

### **eds — Edit distance searcher**

`editDistanceSearcher`

Edit distance searcher, specified as an `editDistanceSearcher` object.

### **words — Input words**

`string vector` | `character vector` | `cell array of character vectors`

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify `words` as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

### **maxDist — Maximum search distance**

`non-negative number`

Maximum search distance, specified as a non-negative number.

The function finds the indices of the words in `eds` whose edit distance to the elements of `words` are fewer than or equal to `maxDist`, sorted in the ascending order edit distance.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

## Output Arguments

### **idx — Indices of nearest neighbors in searcher**

`cell array of vectors`

Indices of nearest neighbors in the searcher, returned as a cell array of vectors.

`idx{i}` is a vector of indices of the words in `eds` whose edit distance to `words(i)` is less than or equal to `maxDist`, sorted in the ascending order edit distance.

Data Types: `cell`

### **d — Edit distances to neighbors**

cell array of vectors

Edit distances to neighbors, returned as a cell array of vectors.

`d{i}` is a vector of edit distances between `words(i)` and the corresponding words in `eds` given by the vocabulary indices `idx{i}`.

Data Types: `cell`

## **See Also**

`editDistance` | `editDistanceSearcher` | `knnsearch` | `splitGraphemes` | `tokenizedDocument`

## **Topics**

“Correct Spelling Using Edit Distance Searchers”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

**Introduced in R2019a**

## ratioSentimentScores

Sentiment scores with ratio rule

### Syntax

```
compoundScores = ratioSentimentScores(documents)
[compoundScores, positiveScores, negativeScores] =
ratioSentimentScores(documents)
___ = ratioSentimentScores( ___, Name, Value)
```

### Description

Use `ratioSentimentScores` to evaluate sentiment in tokenized text with a ratio rule. The `ratioSentimentScores` function uses, by default, the VADER sentiment lexicon.

`compoundScores = ratioSentimentScores(documents)` returns sentiment scores for tokenized documents based on the ratio of positive and negative tokens. For each document where the ratio of the positive score to negative score is larger than 1, the function returns 1. For each document where the ratio of the negative score to positive score is larger than 1, the function returns -1. Otherwise, the function returns 0.

`[compoundScores, positiveScores, negativeScores] = ratioSentimentScores(documents)` also returns the sums of the positive and negative token scores of the documents respectively.

`___ = ratioSentimentScores( ___, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pairs.

### Examples

#### Evaluate Sentiment in Text

Create a tokenized document.

```
str = [
    "The book was VERY good!!!!"
    "The book was terrible."];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Evaluate the sentiment of the tokenized documents. A score of 1 indicates positive sentiment, a score of -1 indicates negative sentiment, and a score of 0 indicates neutral sentiment.

```
compoundScores = ratioSentimentScores(documents)
compoundScores = 2×1
    1
   -1
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of **Name**, **Value** arguments. **Name** is the argument name and **Value** is the corresponding value. **Name** must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as **Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN**.

Example: `Threshold, 0.5` sets the ratio threshold to 0.5

### **SentimentLexicon** — Sentiment lexicon

table

Sentiment lexicon, specified as a table with the following columns:

- **Token - Token**, specified as a string scalar.
- **SentimentScore - Sentiment score of token**, specified as a numeric scalar.

The default sentiment lexicon is the VADER sentiment lexicon.

Data Types: `table`

### **Threshold — Ratio threshold**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar

Ratio threshold, specified as a nonnegative scalar.

If the ratio of the positive score to negative score of documents (`i`) is larger than `Threshold`, then `compoundScores(i)` is 1. If the ratio of the negative score to positive score of documents (`i`) is larger than `Threshold`, then `compoundScores(i)` is -1. Otherwise, `compoundScores(i)` is 0.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

## Output Arguments

### **compoundScores — Compound sentiment scores**

numeric vector

Compound sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document.

If the ratio of the positive score to negative score of documents (`i`) is larger than `Threshold`, then `compoundScores(i)` is 1. If the ratio of the negative score to positive score of documents (`i`) is larger than `Threshold`, then `compoundScores(i)` is -1. Otherwise, `compoundScores(i)` is 0.

### **positiveScores — Positive sentiment scores**

numeric vector

Positive sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document. The value `positiveScores(i)` corresponds to the positive sentiment score of documents (`i`).

### **negativeScores — Negative sentiment scores**

numeric vector

Negative sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document. The value `negativeScores(i)` corresponds to the negative sentiment score of `documents(i)`.

## See Also

`tokenizedDocument` | `vaderSentimentScores`

## Topics

*"Analyze Sentiment in Text"*

*"Train a Sentiment Classifier"*

*"Create Simple Text Model for Classification"*

*"Analyze Text Data Containing Emojis"*

*"Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models"*

**Introduced in R2019b**

## readPDFFormData

Read data from PDF forms

### Syntax

```
data = readPDFFormData(filename)
data = readPDFFormData(filename, 'Password', password)
```

### Description

`data = readPDFFormData(filename)` reads the data from a PDF form into a struct.

`data = readPDFFormData(filename, 'Password', password)` specifies the password for opening the PDF form.

### Examples

#### Read Data from PDF Form

Read the data from the form fields in `weatherReportForm1.pdf` using `readPDFFormData`. The function returns a struct containing the data from the PDF form fields.

```
filename = "weatherReportForm1.pdf";
data = readPDFFormData(filename)

data = struct with fields:
    event_type: "Thunderstorm Wind"
    event_narrative: "Large tree down between Plantersville and Nettleton."
```

#### Read Data From Multiple Forms

Read the data from the form fields in multiple files using a file datastore.



Create a file datastore for the weather reports forms. The forms are named "weatherReportFormN.pdf", where N is the number of the form.. Specify the file name using the wildcard "\*" to find all file names of this structure. To specify the read function to be readPDFFormData, input this function to fileDatastore using a function handle.

```
fds = fileDatastore("weatherReportForm*.pdf", 'ReadFcn', @readPDFFormData)
```

```
fds =
```

```
FileDatastore with properties:
```

```

    Files: {
        ' ...\ib6635F1\4\tpdc94b542\textanalytics-ex39762425\weat
        ' ...\ib6635F1\4\tpdc94b542\textanalytics-ex39762425\weat
        ' ...\ib6635F1\4\tpdc94b542\textanalytics-ex39762425\weat
        ... and 1 more
    }
    UniformRead: 0
    ReadMode: 'file'
    BlockSize: Inf
    PreviewFcn: @readPDFFormData
    ReadFcn: @readPDFFormData
    AlternateFileSystemRoots: {}

```

Loop over the files in the datastore and read each PDF form.

```
data = [];
while hasdata(fds)
    textData = read(fds);
    data = [data; textData];
end
data
```

```
data=4x2 struct
    event_type
    event_narrative
```

## Input Arguments

**filename** — Name of file

string scalar | character vector

Name of the file, specified as a string scalar or character vector.

`readPDFFormData` supports AcroForm PDF files (interactive forms) only.

Data Types: `string` | `char`

### **password — Password to open PDF file**

`string scalar` | `character vector`

Password to open PDF file, specified as a character vector or a string scalar.

Example: `'skroWhtaM'`

Data Types: `string` | `char`

## Output Arguments

### **data — Output struct**

`struct`

Output struct. The fields of `data` correspond to the names of the form fields in the PDF. If the form field names are not valid struct field names, then the function automatically edits them to construct valid names.

## See Also

`extractFileText` | `extractHTMLText` | `readPDFFormData` | `tokenizedDocument` | `writeTextDocument`

## Topics

“Extract Text Data from Files”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2018a**

# readWordEmbedding

Read word embedding from file

## Syntax

```
emb = readWordEmbedding(filename)
```

## Description

`emb = readWordEmbedding(filename)` reads the pretrained word embedding stored in text file or zip file `filename`. The input file must be a text file with UTF-8 encoding in either the word2vec or GloVe text embedding format, or a zip file containing a text file of this format.

If the word embedding file contains duplicate words, then the software uses the word vector corresponding to the last duplicate entry.

## Examples

### Read Word Embedding from Text File

Read the example word embedding. This model was derived by analyzing text from Wikipedia.

```
filename = "exampleWordEmbedding.vec";  
emb = readWordEmbedding(filename)
```

```
emb =  
wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
    Dimension: 50  
    Vocabulary: [1x9999 string]
```

Explore the word embedding using `word2vec` and `vec2word`.

```
king = word2vec(emb, "king");
man = word2vec(emb, "man");
woman = word2vec(emb, "woman");
word = vec2word(emb, king - man + woman)

word =
"queen"
```

## Input Arguments

### **filename** — Name of file

string scalar | character vector

Name of the file, specified as a string scalar or character vector.

Data Types: string | char

## Output Arguments

### **emb** — Output word embedding

word embedding

Output word embedding, returned as a wordEmbedding object.

## See Also

doc2sequence | fastTextWordEmbedding | tokenizedDocument |  
trainWordEmbedding | vec2word | word2vec | wordEmbedding |  
wordEmbeddingLayer | wordEncoding | writeWordEmbedding

## Topics

“Train a Sentiment Classifier”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

## Introduced in R2017b

# regexprep

Replace text in words of documents using regular expression

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = regexprep(documents,expression,replace)
```

## Description

Text Analytics Toolbox provides functions for common text preprocessing steps. For example, to remove punctuation and symbol characters, use `erasePunctuation` or to remove stem words using the Porter stemmer, use `normalizeWords`. For more information, see “Text Data Preparation”.

`newDocuments = regexprep(documents,expression,replace)` replaces all occurrences of the regular expression `expression` in the words of `documents` with the text in `replace`.

The function matches each word independently. The match does not have to span the whole word.

## Examples

### Update Text in Words

Replace words that begin with "s", end "e", and have at least one character between them. To match whole words, use "^" to match the start of a word and "\$" to match the end of the word.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"])  
  
documents =  
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

```
expression = "^s(\\w+)e$";
replace = "thing";
newDocuments = regexprep(documents,expression,replace)
```

```
newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short thing
    4 tokens: a second short thing
```

If you do not use "^" and "\$", then you can match substrings of the words. Replace all vowels with "\_".

```
expression = "[aeiou]";
replace = "\\_";
newDocuments = regexprep(documents,expression,replace)
```

```
newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: _n_x_mpl_f_sh_rt_s_nt_nc_
    4 tokens: _s_c_nd_sh_rt_s_nt_nc_
```

## Include Captured Tokens in Word Replacement

Replace variations of the word "walk" by capturing the letters that follow "walk".

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "I walk"
    "they walked"
    "we are walking"])
```

```
documents =
  3x1 tokenizedDocument:

    2 tokens: I walk
```

```
2 tokens: they walked
3 tokens: we are walking
```

```
expression = "walk(\w*)";
replace = "ascend$1";
newDocuments = regexprep(documents,expression,replace)
```

```
newDocuments =
    3x1 tokenizedDocument:

    2 tokens: I ascend
    2 tokens: they ascended
    3 tokens: we are ascending
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **expression** — Regular expression

character vector | cell array of character vectors | string array

Regular expression, specified as a character vector, a cell array of character vectors, or a string array. Each expression can contain characters, metacharacters, operators, tokens, and flags that specify patterns to match in `str`.

The following tables describe the elements of regular expressions.

### **Metacharacters**

Metacharacters represent letters, letter ranges, digits, and space characters. Use them to construct a generalized pattern of characters.

Metacharacter	Description	Example
.	Any single character, including white space	'..ain' matches sequences of five consecutive characters that end with 'ain'.
[c <sub>1</sub> c <sub>2</sub> c <sub>3</sub> ]	Any character contained within the square brackets. The following characters are treated literally: \$   . * + ? and - when not used to indicate a range.	'[rp.]ain' matches 'rain' or 'pain' or '.ain'.
[^c <sub>1</sub> c <sub>2</sub> c <sub>3</sub> ]	Any character not contained within the square brackets. The following characters are treated literally: \$   . * + ? and - when not used to indicate a range.	'[^*rp]ain' matches all four-letter sequences that end in 'ain', except 'rain' and 'pain' and '*ain'. For example, it matches 'gain', 'lain', or 'vain'.
[c <sub>1</sub> -c <sub>2</sub> ]	Any character in the range of c <sub>1</sub> through c <sub>2</sub>	'[A-G]' matches a single character in the range of A through G.
\w	Any alphabetic, numeric, or underscore character. For English character sets, \w is equivalent to [a-zA-Z_0-9]	'\w*' identifies a word.
\W	Any character that is not alphabetic, numeric, or underscore. For English character sets, \W is equivalent to [^a-zA-Z_0-9]	'\W*' identifies a term that is not a word.
\s	Any white-space character; equivalent to [ \f\n\r\t\v]	'\w*n\s' matches words that end with the letter n, followed by a white-space character.
\S	Any non-white-space character; equivalent to [^ \f\n\r\t\v]	'd\S' matches a numeric digit followed by any non-white-space character.
\d	Any numeric digit; equivalent to [0-9]	'\d*' matches any number of consecutive digits.
\D	Any nondigit character; equivalent to [^0-9]	'\w*\D\>' matches words that do not end with a numeric digit.
\oN or \o{N}	Character of octal value N	'\o{40}' matches the space character, defined by octal 40.



Metacharacter	Description	Example
\xN or \x{N}	Character of hexadecimal value N	'\x2C' matches the comma character, defined by hex 2C.

### Character Representation

Operator	Description
\a	Alarm (beep)
\b	Backspace
\f	Form feed
\n	New line
\r	Carriage return
\t	Horizontal tab
\v	Vertical tab
\char	Any character with special meaning in regular expressions that you want to match literally (for example, use \\ to match a single backslash)

### Quantifiers

Quantifiers specify the number of times a pattern must occur in the matching text.

Quantifier	Matches the expression when it occurs...	Example
expr*	0 or more times consecutively.	'\w*' matches a word of any length.
expr?	0 times or 1 time.	'\w*(\..m)?' matches words that optionally end with the extension .m.
expr+	1 or more times consecutively.	'' matches an <img> HTML tag when the file name contains one or more characters.
expr{m,n}	At least m times, but no more than n times consecutively.  {0,1} is equivalent to ?.	'\S{4,8}' matches between four and eight non-white-space characters.

Quantifier	Matches the expression when it occurs...	Example
<code>expr{m,}</code>	At least <i>m</i> times consecutively.  <code>{0,}</code> and <code>{1,}</code> are equivalent to <code>*</code> and <code>+</code> , respectively.	' <code>&lt;a href="\w{1,}\.html"&gt;</code> ' matches an <code>&lt;a&gt;</code> HTML tag when the file name contains one or more characters.
<code>expr{n}</code>	Exactly <i>n</i> times consecutively.  Equivalent to <code>{n,n}</code> .	' <code>\d{4}</code> ' matches four consecutive digits.

Quantifiers can appear in three modes, described in the following table. *q* represents any of the quantifiers in the previous table.

Mode	Description	Example
<code>exprq</code>	Greedy expression: match as many characters as possible.	Given the text ' <code>&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;p&gt;text&lt;/p&gt;&lt;/td&gt;</code> ', the expression ' <code>&lt;/?t.*&gt;</code> ' matches all characters between <code>&lt;tr</code> and <code>/td&gt;</code> :  ' <code>&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;p&gt;text&lt;/p&gt;&lt;/td&gt;</code> '
<code>exprq?</code>	Lazy expression: match as few characters as necessary.	Given the text ' <code>&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;p&gt;text&lt;/p&gt;&lt;/td&gt;</code> ', the expression ' <code>&lt;/?t.*?&gt;</code> ' ends each match at the first occurrence of the closing angle bracket ( <code>&gt;</code> ):  ' <code>&lt;tr&gt;</code> '    ' <code>&lt;td&gt;</code> '    ' <code>&lt;/td&gt;</code> '
<code>exprq+</code>	Possessive expression: match as much as possible, but do not rescan any portions of the text.	Given the text ' <code>&lt;tr&gt;&lt;td&gt;&lt;p&gt;text&lt;/p&gt;&lt;/td&gt;</code> ', the expression ' <code>&lt;/?t.*+&gt;</code> ' does not return any matches, because the closing angle bracket is captured using <code>.*</code> , and is not rescanned.

### Grouping Operators

Grouping operators allow you to capture tokens, apply one operator to multiple elements, or disable backtracking in a specific group.

Grouping Operator	Description	Example
(expr)	Group elements of the expression and capture tokens.	'Joh?n\s(\w*)' captures a token that contains the last name of any person with the first name John or Jon.
(?:expr)	Group, but do not capture tokens.	'(?:[aeiou][^aeiou]){2}' matches two consecutive patterns of a vowel followed by a nonvowel, such as 'anon'.  Without grouping, '[aeiou][^aeiou]{2}' matches a vowel followed by two nonvowels.
(?>expr)	Group atomically. Do not backtrack within the group to complete the match, and do not capture tokens.	'A(?>.* )Z' does not match 'AtoZ', although 'A(?:.* )Z' does. Using the atomic group, Z is captured using .* and is not rescanned.
(expr1 expr2)	Match expression expr1 or expression expr2.  If there is a match with expr1, then expr2 is ignored.  You can include ?: or ?> after the opening parenthesis to suppress tokens or group atomically.	'(let tel)\w+' matches words that start with let or tel.

### Anchors

Anchors in the expression match the beginning or end of the input text or word.

Anchor	Matches the...	Example
^expr	Beginning of the input text.	'^M\w*' matches a word starting with M at the beginning of the text.
expr\$	End of the input text.	'\w*m\$' matches words ending with m at the end of the text.
\<expr	Beginning of a word.	'\<n\w*' matches any words starting with n.

Anchor	Matches the...	Example
<code>expr\&gt;</code>	End of a word.	<code>'\w*e\&gt;'</code> matches any words ending with e.

### Lookaround Assertions

Lookaround assertions look for patterns that immediately precede or follow the intended match, but are not part of the match.

The pointer remains at the current location, and characters that correspond to the test expression are not captured or discarded. Therefore, lookahead assertions can match overlapping character groups.

Lookaround Assertion	Description	Example
<code>expr(?:test)</code>	Look ahead for characters that match <code>test</code> .	<code>'\w*(?=ing)'</code> matches terms that are followed by <code>ing</code> , such as 'Fly' and 'fall' in the input text 'Flying, not falling.'
<code>expr(?:!test)</code>	Look ahead for characters that do not match <code>test</code> .	<code>'i(?:!ng)'</code> matches instances of the letter <code>i</code> that are not followed by <code>ng</code> .
<code>(?&lt;=test)expr</code>	Look behind for characters that match <code>test</code> .	<code>'(?&lt;=re)\w*'</code> matches terms that follow 're', such as 'new', 'use', and 'cycle' in the input text 'renew, reuse, recycle'
<code>(?&lt;!test)expr</code>	Look behind for characters that do not match <code>test</code> .	<code>'(?&lt;!\d)(\d)(?!\d)'</code> matches single-digit numbers (digits that do not precede or follow other digits).

If you specify a lookahead assertion *before* an expression, the operation is equivalent to a logical AND.

Operation	Description	Example
<code>(?=test)expr</code>	Match both <code>test</code> and <code>expr</code> .	<code>'(?=[a-z])^[aeiou]'</code> matches consonants.
<code>(?!test)expr</code>	Match <code>expr</code> and do not match <code>test</code> .	<code>'(?![aeiou])[a-z]'</code> matches consonants.

## Logical and Conditional Operators

Logical and conditional operators allow you to test the state of a given condition, and then use the outcome to determine which pattern, if any, to match next. These operators support logical OR, and if or if/else conditions.

Conditions can be tokens, lookaround operators, or dynamic expressions of the form ( ? @cmd ). Dynamic expressions must return a logical or numeric value.

Conditional Operator	Description	Example
<code>expr1 expr2</code>	Match expression <code>expr1</code> or expression <code>expr2</code> .  If there is a match with <code>expr1</code> , then <code>expr2</code> is ignored.	' <code>(let tel)\w+</code> ' matches words that start with <code>let</code> or <code>tel</code> .
<code>(?(cond)expr)</code>	If condition <code>cond</code> is true, then match <code>expr</code> .	' <code>(?(?@ispc)[A-Z]:\\)</code> ' matches a drive name, such as <code>C:\</code> , when run on a Windows® system.
<code>(?(cond)expr1 expr2)</code>	If condition <code>cond</code> is true, then match <code>expr1</code> . Otherwise, match <code>expr2</code> .	' <code>Mr(s?)\..*?(?1)her his)\w*</code> ' matches text that includes <code>her</code> when the text begins with <code>Mrs</code> , or that includes <code>his</code> when the text begins with <code>Mr</code> .

## Token Operators

Tokens are portions of the matched text that you define by enclosing part of the regular expression in parentheses. You can refer to a token by its sequence in the text (an ordinal token), or assign names to tokens for easier code maintenance and readable output.

Ordinal Token Operator	Description	Example
<code>(expr)</code>	Capture in a token the characters that match the enclosed expression.	' <code>Joh?n\s(\w*)</code> ' captures a token that contains the last name of any person with the first name <code>John</code> or <code>Jon</code> .

Ordinal Token Operator	Description	Example
<code>\N</code>	Match the Nth token.	'<(\w+).*>.*</\1>' captures tokens for HTML tags, such as 'title' from the text '<title>Some text</title>'.
<code>(? (N) expr1   expr2)</code>	If the Nth token is found, then match expr1. Otherwise, match expr2.	'Mr(s?)\..*?(?(1)her his)\w*' matches text that includes her when the text begins with Mrs, or that includes his when the text begins with Mr.

Named Token Operator	Description	Example
<code>(?&lt;name&gt;expr)</code>	Capture in a named token the characters that match the enclosed expression.	'(?<month>\d+) - (?<day>\d+) - (?<yr>\d+)' creates named tokens for the month, day, and year in an input date of the form mm-dd-yy.
<code>\k&lt;name&gt;</code>	Match the token referred to by name.	'<(?(tag)\w+).*>.*</\k<tag>>' captures tokens for HTML tags, such as 'title' from the text '<title>Some text</title>'.
<code>(?(name)expr1   expr2)</code>	If the named token is found, then match expr1. Otherwise, match expr2.	'Mr(?(sex>s?)\..*?(?(sex)her his)\w*' matches text that includes her when the text begins with Mrs, or that includes his when the text begins with Mr.

---

**Note** If an expression has nested parentheses, MATLAB® captures tokens that correspond to the outermost set of parentheses. For example, given the search pattern '(and(y|rew))', MATLAB creates a token for 'andrew' but not for 'y' or 'rew'.

---

### Dynamic Regular Expressions

Dynamic expressions allow you to execute a MATLAB command or a regular expression to determine the text to match.

The parentheses that enclose dynamic expressions do *not* create a capturing group.

Operator	Description	Example
(??expr)	Parse <i>expr</i> and include the resulting term in the match expression.  When parsed, <i>expr</i> must correspond to a complete, valid regular expression. Dynamic expressions that use the backslash escape character (\) require two backslashes: one for the initial parsing of <i>expr</i> , and one for the complete match.	'^(\d+)((??\w{\$1}))' determines how many characters to match by reading a digit at the beginning of the match. The dynamic expression is enclosed in a second set of parentheses so that the resulting match is captured in a token. For instance, matching '5XXXXX' captures tokens for '5' and 'XXXXX'.
(??@cmd)	Execute the MATLAB command represented by <i>cmd</i> , and include the output returned by the command in the match expression.	'(.{2,}).?(??@fliplr(\$1))' finds palindromes that are at least four characters long, such as 'abba'.
(?@cmd)	Execute the MATLAB command represented by <i>cmd</i> , but discard any output the command returns. (Helpful for diagnosing regular expressions.)	'\w*?(?@disp(\$1))\1\w*' matches words that include double letters (such as pp), and displays intermediate results.

Within dynamic expressions, use the following operators to define replacement text.

Replacement Operator	Description
\$& or \$0	Portion of the input text that is currently a match
\$`	Portion of the input text that precedes the current match
\$'	Portion of the input text that follows the current match (use \$' ' to represent \$')
\$N	Nth token
\$<name>	Named token
\${cmd}	Output returned when MATLAB executes the command, <i>cmd</i>

### Comments

Characters	Description	Example
(?#comment)	Insert a comment in the regular expression. The comment text is ignored when matching the input.	'(?# Initial digit)\<d\w+' includes a comment, and matches words that begin with a number.

### Search Flags

Search flags modify the behavior for matching expressions. An alternative to using a search flag within an expression is to pass an `option` input argument.

Flag	Description
(?-i)	Match letter case (default for <code>regexp</code> and <code>regexprep</code> ).
(?i)	Do not match letter case (default for <code>regexp</code> ).
(?s)	Match dot (.) in the pattern with any character (default).
(?-s)	Match dot in the pattern with any character that is not a newline character.
(?-m)	Match the ^ and \$ metacharacters at the beginning and end of text (default).
(?m)	Match the ^ and \$ metacharacters at the beginning and end of a line.
(?-x)	Include space characters and comments when matching (default).
(?x)	Ignore space characters and comments when matching. Use '\ ' and '\#' to match space and # characters.

The expression that the flag modifies can appear either after the parentheses, such as

`(?i)\w*`

or inside the parentheses and separated from the flag with a colon (:), such as

`(?i:\w*)`

The latter syntax allows you to change the behavior for part of a larger expression.

Data Types: `char` | `cell` | `string`

### **replace** — Replacement text

character vector | cell array of character vectors | string array

Replacement text, specified as a character vector, a cell array of character vectors, or a string array, as follows:



- If `replace` is a single character vector and `expression` is a cell array of character vectors, then `regexprep` uses the same replacement text for each expression.
- If `replace` is a cell array of `N` character vectors and `expression` is a single character vector, then `regexprep` attempts `N` matches and replacements.
- If both `replace` and `expression` are cell arrays of character vectors, then they must contain the same number of elements. `regexprep` pairs each `replace` element with its corresponding element in `expression`.

The replacement text can include regular characters, special characters (such as tabs or new lines), or replacement operators, as shown in the following tables.

Replacement Operator	Description
<code>\$&amp;</code> or <code>\$0</code>	Portion of the input text that is currently a match
<code>\$`</code>	Portion of the input text that precedes the current match
<code>\$'</code>	Portion of the input text that follows the current match (use <code>\$''</code> to represent <code>\$'</code> )
<code>\$N</code>	<code>N</code> th token
<code>\$&lt;name&gt;</code>	Named token
<code>\${cmd}</code>	Output returned when MATLAB executes the command, <code>cmd</code>

Operator	Description
<code>\a</code>	Alarm (beep)
<code>\b</code>	Backspace
<code>\f</code>	Form feed
<code>\n</code>	New line
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return
<code>\t</code>	Horizontal tab
<code>\v</code>	Vertical tab
<code>\char</code>	Any character with special meaning in regular expressions that you want to match literally (for example, use <code>\\</code> to match a single backslash)

Data Types: `char` | `cell` | `string`

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Tips

- Text Analytics Toolbox provides functions for common text preprocessing steps. For example, to remove punctuation and symbol characters, use `erasePunctuation` or to remove stem words using the Porter stemmer, use `normalizeWords`. For more information, see “Text Data Preparation”.

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `erasePunctuation` | `eraseTags` | `eraseURLs` | `normalizeWords` | `removeLongWords` | `removeShortWords` | `removeWords` | `replace` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# removeDocument

Remove documents from bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

## Syntax

```
newBag = removeDocument(bag, idx)
```

## Description

`newBag = removeDocument(bag, idx)` removes the documents with indices specified by `idx` from the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`. If the removed documents contain words or n-grams that do not appear in the remaining documents, then the function also removes these words or n-grams from `bag`.

## Examples

### Remove Documents from Bag-of-Words Model

Remove selected documents from a bag-of-words model.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"  
    "a third example"  
    "a final sentence"]);  
bag = bagOfWords(documents)  
  
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
    Counts: [4x9 double]  
    Vocabulary: [1x9 string]  
    NumWords: 9  
    NumDocuments: 4
```

Remove the first and third documents from bag.

```
idx = [1 3];
newBag = removeDocument(bag,idx)

newBag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [2x5 double]
  Vocabulary: ["a"      "short"    "sentence"    "second"    "final"]
    NumWords: 5
  NumDocuments: 2
```

Remove the same documents using logical indices.

```
idx = logical([1 0 1 0]);
newBag = removeDocument(bag,idx)

newBag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [2x5 double]
  Vocabulary: ["a"      "short"    "sentence"    "second"    "final"]
    NumWords: 5
  NumDocuments: 2
```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a bagOfWords object or a bagOfNgrams object.

### **idx** — Indices of documents to remove

vector of numeric indices | vector of logical indices

Indices of documents to remove, specified as a vector of numeric indices or a vector of logical indices.

Example: [2 4 6]

Example: [0 1 0 1 0 1]

## Output Arguments

### **newBag — Output model**

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Output model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. The type of `newBag` is the same as the type of `bag`.

## See Also

`addDocument` | `bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `removeEmptyDocuments` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”*  
*“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”*  
*“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”*

**Introduced in R2017b**

## removeEmptyDocuments

Remove empty documents from tokenized document array, bag-of-words model, or bag-of-n-grams model

### Syntax

```
newDocuments = removeEmptyDocuments(documents)
newBag = removeEmptyDocuments(bag)
[ ____,idx] = removeEmptyDocuments( ____ )
```

### Description

`newDocuments = removeEmptyDocuments(documents)` removes documents which have no words from `documents`.

`newBag = removeEmptyDocuments(bag)` removes documents which have no words or n-grams from the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`[ ____,idx] = removeEmptyDocuments( ____ )` also returns the indices of the removed documents.

### Examples

#### Remove Empty Documents from Array

Remove documents containing no words from an array of tokenized documents.

Create an array of tokenized documents which includes empty documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    ""
    "a second short sentence"
    ""])
```

```
documents =
  4x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    0 tokens:
    4 tokens: a second short sentence
    0 tokens:
```

Remove the empty documents.

```
newDocuments = removeEmptyDocuments(documents)

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

### Remove Empty Documents from Bag-of-Words Model

Remove documents containing no words from bag-of-words model.

Create a bag-of-words model from an array of tokenized documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "An example of a short sentence."
    ""
    "A second short sentence."
    ""]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

    Counts: [4x9 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x9 string]
    NumWords: 9
    NumDocuments: 4
```

Remove the empty documents from the bag-of-words model.

```
newBag = removeEmptyDocuments(bag)
```

```
newBag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
  
    Counts: [2x9 double]  
    Vocabulary: [1x9 string]  
    NumWords: 9  
    NumDocuments: 2
```

## Remove Documents and Corresponding Labels

Remove documents containing no words from an array and use the indices of removed documents to remove the corresponding labels also.

Create an array of tokenized documents which includes empty documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
  "an example of a short sentence"  
  ""  
  "a second short sentence"  
  ""])
```

```
documents =  
  4x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence  
    0 tokens:  
    4 tokens: a second short sentence  
    0 tokens:
```

Create a vector of labels.

```
labels = ["T"; "F"; "F"; "T"]
```

```
labels = 4x1 string array  
    "T"  
    "F"  
    "F"  
    "T"
```



Remove the empty documents and get the indices of the removed documents.

```
[newDocuments, idx] = removeEmptyDocuments(documents)
```

```
newDocuments =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence  
    4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

```
idx = 2x1
```

```
  2  
  4
```

Remove the corresponding labels from `labels`.

```
labels(idx) = []
```

```
labels = 2x1 string array  
    "T"  
    "F"
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a bagOfWords object or a bagOfNgrams object.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments — Output documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

### **newBag — Output model**

`bagOfWords` object | `bagOfNgrams` object

Output model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. The type of `newBag` is the same as the type of `bag`.

### **idx — Indices of removed documents**

vector of positive integers

Indices of removed documents, returned as a vector of positive integers.

## See Also

`addDocument` | `bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `removeDocument` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”*  
*“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”*  
*“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”*

### **Introduced in R2017b**

# removeInfrequentNgrams

Remove infrequently seen n-grams from bag-of-n-grams model

## Syntax

```
newBag = removeInfrequentNgrams (bag, count)
newBag = removeInfrequentNgrams (bag, count, 'NgramLengths', lengths)
```

## Description

`newBag = removeInfrequentNgrams (bag, count)` removes the n-grams that appear at most count times in total from the bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`newBag = removeInfrequentNgrams (bag, count, 'NgramLengths', lengths)` only removes n-grams with lengths specified by `lengths`.

## Examples

### Remove Infrequent N-Grams from Bag-of-N-Grams Model

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-n-grams model. Specify to count bigrams (pairs of words) and trigrams (triples of words).

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents, 'NgramLengths', [2 3])
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
      Counts: [154x18022 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
      Ngrams: [18022x3 string]  
      NgramLengths: [2 3]  
      NumNgrams: 18022  
      NumDocuments: 154
```

Remove n-grams of any length that appear two or fewer times in total.

```
bag = removeInfrequentNgrams(bag,2)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
      Counts: [154x103 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x73 string]  
      Ngrams: [103x3 string]  
      NgramLengths: [2 3]  
      NumNgrams: 103  
      NumDocuments: 154
```

Remove bigrams that appear four or fewer times in total.

```
bag = removeInfrequentNgrams(bag,4, 'NgramLengths',2)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
      Counts: [154x41 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x30 string]  
      Ngrams: [41x3 string]  
      NgramLengths: [2 3]  
      NumNgrams: 41  
      NumDocuments: 154
```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a bagOfNgrams object.

### **count** — Count threshold

positive integer

Count threshold, specified as a positive integer. The function removes the n-grams that appear count times in total or fewer.

### **lengths** — N-gram lengths

positive integer | vector of positive integers

N-gram lengths, specified as a positive integer or a vector of positive integers.

If you specify `lengths`, the function removes infrequent n-grams of the specified lengths only. If you do not specify `lengths`, then the function removes infrequent n-grams regardless of length.

Example: [1 2 3]

## Output Arguments

### **newBag** — Output bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfNgrams object

Output bag-of-n-grams model, returned as a bagOfNgrams object.

## See Also

bagOfNgrams | bagOfWords | removeEmptyDocuments | removeInfrequentWords | removeNgrams | tfidf | tokenizedDocument | topkngrams

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”  
“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”  
“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

**Introduced in R2018a**

# removeInfrequentWords

Remove words with low counts from bag-of-words model

## Syntax

```
newBag = removeInfrequentWords(bag, count)
```

## Description

`newBag = removeInfrequentWords(bag, count)` removes the words that appear at most `count` times in total from the bag-of-words model `bag`.

## Examples

### Remove Infrequent Words

Remove the words that appear two times or fewer from a bag-of-words model.

Create a bag-of-words model from an array of tokenized documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"  
    "another example"  
    "a short example"]);  
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
    Counts: [4x8 double]  
    Vocabulary: [1x8 string]  
    NumWords: 8  
    NumDocuments: 4
```

Remove the words that appear two times or fewer from the bag-of-words model.

```
count = 2;
newBag = removeInfrequentWords(bag, count)

newBag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [4x3 double]
  Vocabulary: ["example"    "a"    "short"]
      NumWords: 3
  NumDocuments: 4
```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words model

bagOfWords object

Input bag-of-words model, specified as a bagOfWords object.

### **count** — Count threshold to remove words

positive integer

Count threshold to remove words, specified as a positive integer. The function removes the words that appear `count` times in total or fewer.

## See Also

bagOfNgrams | bagOfWords | removeEmptyDocuments | removeInfrequentNgrams | removeWords | tfidf | tokenizedDocument | topkwords

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”



**Introduced in R2017b**

## removeLongWords

Remove long words from documents or bag-of-words model

### Syntax

```
newDocuments = removeLongWords(documents, len)
newBag = removeLongWords(bag, len)
```

### Description

`newDocuments = removeLongWords(documents, len)` removes words of length `len` or greater from documents.

`newBag = removeLongWords(bag, len)` removes words of length `len` or greater from the `bagOfWords` object `bag`.

### Examples

#### Remove Long Words from Document

Remove the words with seven or greater characters from a document.

```
document = tokenizedDocument("An example of a short sentence");
newDocument = removeLongWords(document, 7)
```

```
newDocument =
  tokenizedDocument:
    4 tokens: An of a short
```

## Remove Long Words from Bag-of-Words Model

Remove the words with seven or greater characters from a bag-of-words model.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
newBag = removeLongWords(bag,7)

newBag =
    bagOfWords with properties:
        Counts: [2x5 double]
        Vocabulary: ["an"    "of"    "a"    "short"    "second"]
        NumWords: 5
        NumDocuments: 2
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words model

bagOfWords object

Input bag-of-words model, specified as a bagOfWords object.

### **len** — Minimum length of words to remove

positive integer

Minimum length of words to remove, specified as a positive integer. The function removes words with len or greater characters.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments — Output documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

### **newBag — Output bag-of-words model**

`bagOfWords` object

Output bag-of-words model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object.

## See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `normalizeWords` | `removeShortWords` | `removeStopWords` | `removeWords` | `stopWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# removeNgrams

Remove n-grams from bag-of-n-grams model

## Syntax

```
newBag = removeNgrams (bag, ngrams)  
newBag = removeNgrams (bag, idx)
```

## Description

`newBag = removeNgrams (bag, ngrams)` removes the specified n-grams from the bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`newBag = removeNgrams (bag, idx)` specifies n-grams by numeric or logical indices in `bag.Ngrams`. This syntax is the same as `newBag = removeNgrams (bag, bag.Ngrams (idx, :))`.

## Examples

### Remove N-Grams from Bag-of-N-Grams Model

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str, newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create bag-of-n-grams model.

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
      Counts: [154×8799 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1×3092 string]  
      Ngrams: [8799×2 string]  
      NgramLengths: 2  
      NumNgrams: 8799  
      NumDocuments: 154
```

View the top five n-grams.

```
topkngrams(bag,5)
```

```
ans=5×3 table  
      Ngram      Count      NgramLength  
-----  
"thou"  "art"      34          2  
"mine"  "eye"      15          2  
"thy"   "self"     14          2  
"thou"  "dost"     13          2  
"mine"  "own"      13          2
```

Remove the n-grams ["thou" "art"] and ["thou" "dost"] from the model. View the new top 5 n-grams.

```
ngrams = [...  
  "thou" "art"  
  "thou" "dost"];  
bag = removeNgrams(bag,ngrams);  
topkngrams(bag,5)
```

```
ans=5×3 table  
      Ngram      Count      NgramLength  
-----  
"mine"  "eye"      15          2  
"thy"   "self"     14          2  
"mine"  "own"      13          2  
"thy"   "sweet"    12          2  
"thy"   "love"     11          2
```

## Remove N-Grams from Bag-of-N-Grams Model by Index

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create bag-of-n-grams model.

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfNgrams with properties:
    Counts: [154x8799 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    Ngrams: [8799x2 string]
    NgramLengths: 2
    NumNgrams: 8799
    NumDocuments: 154
```

View the first ten n-grams in the model.

```
bag.Ngrams(1:10, :)
ans = 10x2 string array
    "fairest"    "creatures"
    "creatures"  "desire"
    "desire"     "increase"
    "increase"   "thereby"
    "thereby"    "beautys"
    "beautys"    "rose"
    "rose"       "might"
    "might"      "never"
    "never"      "die"
    "die"        "riper"
```

Remove the 9th and 10th n-grams from the model. View the new list of the first ten n-grams.

```
idx = [9 10];
bag = removeNgrams(bag,idx);
bag.Ngrams(1:10,:)

ans = 10x2 string array
    "fairest"      "creatures"
    "creatures"   "desire"
    "desire"       "increase"
    "increase"    "thereby"
    "thereby"     "beautys"
    "beautys"     "rose"
    "rose"        "might"
    "might"       "never"
    "riper"       "time"
    "time"        "decease"
```

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfNgrams` object.

### **ngrams** — N-grams to remove

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

N-grams to remove, specified as a string array, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

If `ngrams` is a string array or cell array, then it has size `NumNgrams-by-maxN`, where `NumNgrams` is the number of n-grams, and `maxN` is the length of the largest n-gram. If `ngrams` is a character vector, then it represents a single word (unigram).

The value of `ngrams(i,j)` is the `j`th word of the `i`th n-gram. If the number of words in the `i`th n-gram is less than `maxN`, then the remaining entries of the `i`th row of `ngrams` are empty.

Example: `["An" ""; "An example"; "example" ""]`



Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

### **idx — Indices of n-grams to remove**

vector of numeric indices | vector of logical indices

Indices of n-grams to remove, specified as a vector of numeric indices or a vector of logical indices. The indices in `idx` correspond to the rows of the `bag.Ngrams`.

Example: `[1 5 10]`

## **See Also**

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `removeEmptyDocuments` | `removeInfrequentNgrams` | `removeWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## **Topics**

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”  
“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”  
“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

**Introduced in R2018a**

## removeShortWords

Remove short words from documents or bag-of-words model

### Syntax

```
newDocuments = removeShortWords(documents, len)
newBag = removeShortWords(bag, len)
```

### Description

`newDocuments = removeShortWords(documents, len)` removes words of length `len` or less from documents.

`newBag = removeShortWords(bag, len)` removes words of length `len` or less from the `bagOfWords` object `bag`.

### Examples

#### Remove Short Words from Document

Remove the words with two or fewer characters from a document.

```
document = tokenizedDocument("An example of a short sentence");
newDocument = removeShortWords(document, 2)
```

```
newDocument =
  tokenizedDocument:
    3 tokens: example short sentence
```

## Remove Short Words from Bag-of-Words Model

Remove the words with two or fewer characters from a bag-of-words model.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([ ...
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
newBag = removeShortWords(bag,2)

newBag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: [2x4 double]
  Vocabulary: ["example"    "short"    "sentence"    "second"]
    NumWords: 4
  NumDocuments: 2
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words model

bagOfWords object

Input bag-of-words model, specified as a bagOfWords object.

### **len** — Maximum length of words to remove

positive integer

Maximum length of words to remove, specified as a positive integer. The function removes words with len or fewer characters.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments — Output documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

### **newBag — Output bag-of-words model**

`bagOfWords` object

Output bag-of-words model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object.

## See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `normalizeWords` | `removeLongWords` | `removeWords` | `stopWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# removeStopWords

Remove stop words from documents

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = removeStopWords(documents)
```

## Description

Words like "a", "and", "to", and "the" (known as stop words) can add noise to data. Use this function to remove stop words before analysis.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text. To learn how to use `removeStopWords` for other languages, see “Language Considerations” on page 1-324.

`newDocuments = removeStopWords(documents)` removes the stop words from the `tokenizedDocument` array `documents`.

---

**Tip** Use `removeStopWords` before using the `normalizeWords` function as `removeStopWords` uses information that is removed by this function.

---

## Examples

### Remove Stop Words from Documents

Remove the stop words from an array of documents using `removeStopWords`. The `tokenizedDocument` function detects that the documents are in English, so `removeStopWords` removes English stop words.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"]);  
newDocuments = removeStopWords(documents)
```

```
newDocuments =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    3 tokens: example short sentence  
    3 tokens: second short sentence
```

## Remove Japanese Stop Words

Tokenize Japanese text using `tokenizedDocument`. The function automatically detects Japanese text.

```
str = [  
  "ここは静かなので、とても穏やかです"  
  "企業内の顧客データを利用し、今年の売上げを調べることが出来た。"  
  "私は先生です。私は英語を教えています。"];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Remove stop words using `removeStopWords`. The function uses the language details from `documents` to determine which language stop words to remove.

```
documents = removeStopWords(documents)  
  
documents =  
  3x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    4 tokens: 静か 、 とても 穏やか  
   10 tokens: 企業 顧客 データ 利用 、 今年 売上げ 調べる 出来 。  
    5 tokens: 先生 。 英語 教え 。
```

## Remove German Stop Words from Documents

Tokenize German text using `tokenizedDocument`. The function automatically detects German text.

```
str = [  
  "Guten Morgen. Wie geht es dir?"  
  "Heute wird ein guter Tag."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)
```

```
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    8 tokens: Guten Morgen . Wie geht es dir ?  
    6 tokens: Heute wird ein guter Tag .
```

Remove stop words using the `removeStopWords` function. The function uses the language details from documents to determine which language stop words to remove.

```
documents = removeStopWords(documents)
```

```
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    5 tokens: Guten Morgen . geht ?  
    5 tokens: Heute wird guter Tag .
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

tokenizedDocument array

Output documents, returned as a tokenizedDocument array.

## More About

### Language Considerations

The `stopWords` and `removeStopWords` functions support English, Japanese, German, and Korean stop words only.

To remove stop words from other languages, use `removeWords` and specify your own stop words to remove.

## Algorithms

### Language Details

`tokenizedDocument` objects contain details about the tokens including language details. The language details of the input documents determine the behavior of `removeStopWords`. The `tokenizedDocument` function, by default, automatically detects the language of the input text. To specify the language details manually, use the 'Language' name-value pair argument of `tokenizedDocument`. To view the token details, use the `tokenDetails` function.

## See Also

`bagOfWords` | `normalizeWords` | `removeLongWords` | `removeShortWords` | `removeWords` | `stopWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Language Considerations”  
“Japanese Language Support”  
“German Language Support”

### Introduced in R2018b



# removeWords

Remove selected words from documents or bag-of-words model

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = removeWords(documents, words)
newDocuments = removeWords(documents, idx)
```

```
newBag = removeWords(bag, words)
newBag = removeWords(bag, idx)
```

## Description

`newDocuments = removeWords(documents, words)` removes the specified words from documents.

`newDocuments = removeWords(documents, idx)` removes words by specifying the numeric or logical indices `idx` of the words in `documents.Vocabulary`. This syntax is the same as `newDocuments = removeWords(documents, documents.Vocabulary(idx))`.

`newBag = removeWords(bag, words)` removes the specified words from the bag-of-words model `bag`.

`newBag = removeWords(bag, idx)` removes words by specifying the numeric or logical indices `idx` of the words in `bag.Vocabulary`. This syntax is the same as `newBag = removeWords(bag, bag.Vocabulary(idx))`.

## Examples

### Remove Words from Documents

Remove words from an array of documents by inputting a string array of words to `removeWords`.

Create an array of tokenized documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"]);
```

Remove the words "short" and "second".

```
words = ["short" "second"];  
newDocuments = removeWords(documents,words)
```

```
newDocuments =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    5 tokens: an example of a sentence  
    2 tokens: a sentence
```

## Remove Custom List of Stop Words from Documents

To remove the default list of stop words using the language details of documents, use `removeStopWords`.

To remove a custom list of stop words, use the `removeWords` function. You can use the stop word list returned by the `stopWords` function as a starting point.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

View the first few documents.

```
documents(1:5)  
  
ans =  
  5x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```

70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys legac
61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants sa

```

Create a list of stop words starting with the output of the `stopWords` function.

```
customStopWords = [stopWords "thy" "thee" "thou" "dost" "doth"];
```

Remove the custom stop words from the documents and view the first few documents.

```
documents = removeWords(documents,customStopWords);
documents(1:5)
```

```
ans =
    5x1 tokenizedDocument:

    62 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
    61 tokens: forty winters shall besiege brow dig deep trenches beautys field youths
    52 tokens: look glass tell face viewest time face form another whose fresh repair
    52 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why spend upon self beautys legacy natures bequest
    59 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye dwell play tyrants same un

```

## Remove Words from Documents by Index

Remove words from documents by inputting a vector of numeric indices to `removeWords`.

Create an array of tokenized documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "I love MATLAB"
    "I love MathWorks"])
```

```
documents =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    3 tokens: I love MATLAB
    3 tokens: I love MathWorks

```

View the vocabulary of documents.

```
documents.Vocabulary
```

```
ans = 1x4 string array
    "I"      "love"    "MATLAB"    "MathWorks"
```

Remove the first and third words of the vocabulary from the documents by specifying the numeric indices [1 3].

```
idx = [1 3];
newDocuments = removeWords(documents,idx)
```

```
newDocuments =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    1 tokens: love
    2 tokens: love MathWorks
```

Alternatively, you can specify logical indices.

```
idx = logical([1 0 1 0]);
newDocuments = removeWords(documents,idx)
```

```
newDocuments =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    1 tokens: love
    2 tokens: love MathWorks
```

## Remove Stop Words from Bag-of-Words Model

Remove the stop words from a bag-of-words model by inputting a list of stop words to `removeWords`. Stop words are words such as "a", "the", and "in" which are commonly removed from text before analysis.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"]);
```

```

bag = bagOfWords(documents);
newBag = removeWords(bag, stopWords)

newBag =
    bagOfWords with properties:
        Counts: [2x4 double]
        Vocabulary: ["example"    "short"    "sentence"    "second"]
        NumWords: 4
        NumDocuments: 2

```

### Remove Words from Bag-of-Words Model by Index

Remove words from a bag-of-words model by inputting a vector of numeric indices to `removeWords`.

Create an array of tokenized documents.

```

documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "I love MATLAB"
    "I love MathWorks"]);
bag = bagOfWords(documents)

bag =
    bagOfWords with properties:
        Counts: [2x4 double]
        Vocabulary: ["I"    "love"    "MATLAB"    "MathWorks"]
        NumWords: 4
        NumDocuments: 2

```

View the vocabulary of `bag`.

```

bag.Vocabulary

ans = 1x4 string array
    "I"    "love"    "MATLAB"    "MathWorks"

```

Remove the first and third words of the vocabulary from the bag-of-words model by specifying the numeric indices `[1 3]`.

```
idx = [1 3];
newBag = removeWords(bag,idx)

newBag =
    bagOfWords with properties:

        Counts: [2x2 double]
    Vocabulary: ["love"      "MathWorks"]
        NumWords: 2
    NumDocuments: 2
```

Alternatively, you can specify logical indices.

```
idx = logical([1 0 1 0]);
newBag = removeWords(bag,idx)

newBag =
    bagOfWords with properties:

        Counts: [2x2 double]
    Vocabulary: ["love"      "MathWorks"]
        NumWords: 2
    NumDocuments: 2
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words model

bagOfWords object

Input bag-of-words model, specified as a bagOfWords object.

### **words** — Words to remove

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Words to remove, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify words as a character vector, then the function treats it as a single word.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

### **idx — Indices of words in vocabulary to remove**

vector of numeric indices | vector of logical indices

Indices of words to remove, specified as a vector of numeric indices or a vector of logical indices. The indices in `idx` correspond to the locations of the words in the `Vocabulary` property of the input documents or bag-of-words model.

Example: `[1 5 10]`

## **Output Arguments**

### **newDocuments — Output documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

### **newBag — Output bag-of-words model**

`bagOfWords` object

Output bag-of-words model, returned as a `bagOfWords` object.

## **See Also**

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `normalizeWords` | `removeEmptyDocuments` | `removeInfrequentWords` | `removeLongWords` | `removeNgrams` | `removeShortWords` | `stopWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## **Topics**

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”  
“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”  
“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

**Introduced in R2017b**



# replace

Replace substrings in documents

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = replace(documents,old,new)
```

## Description

Use `replace` to replace *substrings* of the words in documents. To replace entire words and n-grams in documents, use the `replaceWords` and `replaceNgrams` functions respectively.

`newDocuments = replace(documents,old,new)` replaces all occurrences of `old` in `documents` with `new`.

## Examples

### Replace Substrings in Documents

Replace words in a document array.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([  
    "an extreme example"  
    "another extreme example"])
```

```
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    3 tokens: an extreme example  
    3 tokens: another extreme example
```

```
newDocuments = replace(documents,"example","sentence")
```

```
newDocuments =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    3 tokens: an extreme sentence  
    3 tokens: another extreme sentence
```

Replace substrings of the words.

```
newDocuments = replace(documents, "ex", "X-")
```

```
newDocuments =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    3 tokens: an X-treme X-ample  
    3 tokens: another X-treme X-ample
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **old** — Substring to replace

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Substring to replace, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Data Types: string | char | cell

### **new** — New substring

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

New substring, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## See Also

`bagOfWords` | `decodeHTMLEntities` | `normalizeWords` | `regexprep` |  
`replaceNgrams` | `replaceWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

## replaceWords

Replace words in documents

### Syntax

```
newDocuments = replaceWords(documents, oldWords, newWords)
```

### Description

`newDocuments = replaceWords(documents, oldWords, newWords)` updates the specified documents by replacing the words in `oldWords` with the corresponding words in `newWords`.

### Examples

#### Replace Words in Documents

Use the `replaceWords` function to replace shorthand words with their corresponding full words.

Create an array of tokenized documents.

```
str = [ ...  
    "Increased activity Mon to Fri."  
    "Reduced activity Sat to Sun."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)
```

```
documents =  
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: Increased activity Mon to Fri .  
    6 tokens: Reduced activity Sat to Sun .
```

Replace the shorthand words with their corresponding full words.

```
oldWords = ["Mon" "Tue" "Wed" "Thu" "Fri" "Sat" "Sun"];
newWords = ["Monday" "Tuesday" "Wednesday" "Thursday" "Friday" "Saturday" "Sunday"];
documents = replaceWords(documents,oldWords,newWords)

documents =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: Increased activity Monday to Friday .
    6 tokens: Reduced activity Saturday to Sunday .
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **oldWords** — Words to replace

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Words to replace, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

Data Types: string | char | cell

### **newWords** — New words

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

New words, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

**newWords** must contain one word or be the same size as **oldWords**. If **newWords** contains only one word, then the function replaces all the words in **oldWords** with this word.

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `normalizeWords` | `replaceNgrams` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2019a**

# replaceNgrams

Replace n-grams in documents

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = replaceNgrams (documents, oldNgrams, newNgrams)
```

## Description

`newDocuments = replaceNgrams (documents, oldNgrams, newNgrams)` updates the specified documents by replacing the n-grams in `oldNgrams` documents with the corresponding n-grams in `newNgrams`.

## Examples

### Replace N-grams In Documents

Use the `replaceNgrams` function to replace abbreviations with their corresponding expanded forms.

Create an array of tokenized documents.

```
str = [ ...  
    "Currently in Cambridge, MA."  
    "Next stop, NY!"];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)  
  
documents =  
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: Currently in Cambridge , MA .  
    5 tokens: Next stop , NY !
```

Replace the tokens "MA" and "NY" with "Massachusetts" and ["New" "York"] respectively. If the n-grams have different lengths, you must pad the rows with the empty string "". In this case, you must pad "Massachusetts" with a single empty string "".

```
oldNgrams = [  
  "MA"  
  "NY"];  
newNgrams = [  
  "Massachusetts" ""  
  "New" "York"];  
documents = replaceNgrams(documents,oldNgrams,newNgrams)  
  
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: Currently in Cambridge , Massachusetts .  
    6 tokens: Next stop , New York !
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **oldNgrams** — N-grams to replace

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

N-grams to replace, specified as a string array, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

If `oldNgrams` is a string array or cell array, then it has size `NumNgrams-by-maxN`, where `NumNgrams` is the number of n-grams, and `maxN` is the length of the largest n-gram. If `oldNgrams` is a character vector, then it represents a single word (unigram).

The value of `oldNgrams(i,j)` is the `j`th word of the `i`th n-gram. If the number of words in the `i`th n-gram is less than `maxN`, then the remaining entries of the `i`th row of `oldNgrams` must be padded with the empty string "".



For example, to specify both the unigram "Massachusetts", and the bigram ["New" "York"], specify the 2-by-2 string array ["Massachusetts" ""; "New" "York"], where "Massachusetts" is padded with a single empty string "".

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

### **newNgrams — New n-grams**

`string array` | `character vector` | `cell array of character vectors`

New n-grams, specified as a string array, character vector, or a cell array of character vectors.

If `newNgrams` is a string array or cell array, then it has size `NumNgrams-by-maxN`, where `NumNgrams` is the number of n-grams, and `maxN` is the length of the largest n-gram. If `newNgrams` is a character vector, then it represents a single word (unigram).

The value of `newNgrams(i, j)` is the `j`th word of the `i`th n-gram. If the number of words in the `i`th n-gram is less than `maxN`, then the remaining entries of the `i`th row of `newNgrams` are empty.

`newNgrams` must have one row, or the same number of rows as `oldNgrams`.

For example, to specify both the unigram "Massachusetts", and the bigram ["New" "York"], specify the 2-by-2 string array ["Massachusetts" ""; "New" "York"], where "Massachusetts" is padded with a single empty string "".

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## **Output Arguments**

### **newDocuments — Output documents**

`tokenizedDocument array`

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## **See Also**

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `normalizeWords` | `removeWords` | `replaceWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## **Topics**

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2019a**

## resume

Resume fitting LDA model

### Syntax

```
updatedMdl = resume(ldaMdl, bag)
updatedMdl = resume(ldaMdl, counts)
updatedMdl = resume( ____, Name, Value)
```

### Description

`updatedMdl = resume(ldaMdl, bag)` returns an updated LDA model by training for more iterations on the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`. The input `bag` must be the same model used to fit `ldaMdl`.

`updatedMdl = resume(ldaMdl, counts)` returns an updated LDA model by training for more iterations on the documents represented by the matrix of word counts `counts`. The input `counts` must be the same matrix used to fit `ldaMdl`.

`updatedMdl = resume( ____, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Resume Fitting of LDA Model

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
    bagOfWords with properties:
```

```
    Counts: [154x3092 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
    NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with four topics. The `resume` function does not support the default solver for `fitlda`. Set the LDA solver to be collapsed variational Bayes, zeroth order.

```
numTopics = 4;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Solver','cvb0')
```

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.42		3.292e+03	1.000	0
1	0.25	1.4970e-01	1.147e+03	1.000	0
2	0.05	7.1229e-03	1.091e+03	1.000	0
3	0.19	8.1261e-03	1.031e+03	1.000	0
4	0.08	8.8626e-03	9.703e+02	1.000	0
5	0.03	8.5486e-03	9.154e+02	1.000	0
6	0.02	7.4632e-03	8.703e+02	1.000	0
7	0.02	6.0480e-03	8.356e+02	1.000	0
8	0.05	4.5955e-03	8.102e+02	1.000	0
9	0.10	3.4068e-03	7.920e+02	1.000	0
10	0.02	2.5353e-03	7.788e+02	1.000	0
11	0.06	1.9089e-03	7.690e+02	1.222	10
12	0.02	1.2486e-03	7.626e+02	1.176	7
13	0.03	1.1243e-03	7.570e+02	1.125	7
14	0.11	9.1253e-04	7.524e+02	1.079	7
15	0.11	7.5878e-04	7.486e+02	1.039	6

16	0.04	6.6181e-04	7.454e+02	1.004	6
17	0.05	6.0400e-04	7.424e+02	0.974	6
18	0.09	5.6244e-04	7.396e+02	0.948	6
19	0.09	5.0548e-04	7.372e+02	0.926	5
20	0.09	4.2796e-04	7.351e+02	0.905	5
=====					
Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
=====					
21	0.10	3.4941e-04	7.334e+02	0.887	5
22	0.17	2.9495e-04	7.320e+02	0.871	5
23	0.03	2.6300e-04	7.307e+02	0.857	5
24	0.08	2.5200e-04	7.295e+02	0.844	4
25	0.14	2.4150e-04	7.283e+02	0.833	4
26	0.04	2.0549e-04	7.273e+02	0.823	4
27	0.07	1.6441e-04	7.266e+02	0.813	4
28	0.04	1.3256e-04	7.259e+02	0.805	4
29	0.02	1.1094e-04	7.254e+02	0.798	4
30	0.02	9.2849e-05	7.249e+02	0.791	4
=====					

```
mdl =
```

```
  ldaModel with properties:
```

```

        NumTopics: 4
        WordConcentration: 1
        TopicConcentration: 0.7908
        CorpusTopicProbabilities: [0.2654 0.2531 0.2480 0.2336]
        DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x4 double]
        TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x4 double]
        Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
        TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
        FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

View information about the fit.

```
mdl.FitInfo
```

```
ans = struct with fields:
```

```

    TerminationCode: 1
    TerminationStatus: "Relative tolerance on log-likelihood satisfied."
    NumIterations: 30
    NegativeLogLikelihood: 6.3042e+04
```

```
Perplexity: 724.9445
Solver: "cvb0"
History: [1x1 struct]
```

Resume fitting the LDA model with a lower log-likelihood tolerance.

```
tolerance = 1e-5;
updatedMdl = resume(mdl,bag, ...
    'LogLikelihoodTolerance',tolerance)
```

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
30	0.01		7.249e+02	0.791	0
31	0.08	8.0569e-05	7.246e+02	0.785	3
32	0.18	7.4692e-05	7.242e+02	0.779	3
33	0.10	6.9802e-05	7.239e+02	0.774	3
34	0.03	6.1154e-05	7.236e+02	0.770	3
35	0.12	5.3163e-05	7.233e+02	0.766	3
36	0.04	4.7807e-05	7.231e+02	0.762	3
37	0.04	4.1820e-05	7.229e+02	0.759	3
38	0.03	3.6237e-05	7.227e+02	0.756	3
39	0.07	3.1819e-05	7.226e+02	0.754	2
40	0.04	2.7772e-05	7.224e+02	0.751	2
41	0.05	2.5238e-05	7.223e+02	0.749	2
42	0.06	2.2052e-05	7.222e+02	0.747	2
43	0.03	1.8471e-05	7.221e+02	0.745	2
44	0.03	1.5638e-05	7.221e+02	0.744	2
45	0.02	1.3735e-05	7.220e+02	0.742	2
46	0.02	1.2298e-05	7.219e+02	0.741	2
47	0.07	1.0905e-05	7.219e+02	0.739	2
48	0.04	9.5581e-06	7.218e+02	0.738	2

```
updatedMdl =
  ldaModel with properties:

      NumTopics: 4
    WordConcentration: 1
    TopicConcentration: 0.7383
    CorpusTopicProbabilities: [0.2679 0.2517 0.2495 0.2309]
    DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x4 double]
```

```

TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x4 double]
Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
FitInfo: [1x1 struct]

```

View information about the fit.

```
updatedMdl.FitInfo
```

```

ans = struct with fields:
    TerminationCode: 1
    TerminationStatus: "Relative tolerance on log-likelihood satisfied."
    NumIterations: 48
    NegativeLogLikelihood: 6.3001e+04
    Perplexity: 721.8357
    Solver: "cvb0"
    History: [1x1 struct]

```

## Input Arguments

### **ldaMdl** — Input LDA model

ldaModel object

Input LDA model, specified as an `ldaModel` object. To resume fitting a model, you must fit `ldaMdl` with solver `'savb'`, `'avb'`, or `'cvb0'`.

### **bag** — Input model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

### **counts** — Frequency counts of words

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. If you specify `'DocumentsIn'` to be `'rows'`, then the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the `j`th word of the vocabulary appears in the `i`th document. Otherwise, the value

`counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the *i*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *j*th document.

---

**Note** The arguments `bag` and `counts` must be the same used to fit `LdaMdl`.

---

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'LogLikelihoodTolerance', 0.001` specifies a log-likelihood tolerance of 0.001.

### Solver Options

#### **DocumentsIn — Orientation of documents**

`'rows'` (default) | `'columns'`

Orientation of documents in the word count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DocumentsIn'` and one of the following:

- `'rows'` - Input is a matrix of word counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- `'columns'` - Input is a transposed matrix of word counts with columns corresponding to documents.

This option only applies if you specify the input documents as a matrix of word counts.

---

**Note** If you orient your word count matrix so that documents correspond to columns and specify `'DocumentsIn', 'columns'`, then you might experience a significant reduction in optimization-execution time.

---

#### **FitTopicConcentration — Option for fitting topic concentration parameter**

`true` | `false`

Option for fitting topic concentration, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'FitTopicConcentration'` and either `true` or `false`.



The default value is the value used to fit `ldaMdl`.

Example: `'FitTopicConcentration', true`

Data Types: `logical`

### **FitTopicProbabilities – Option for fitting topic probabilities**

`true | false`

Option for fitting topic concentration, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'FitTopicConcentration'` and either `true` or `false`.

The default value is the value used to fit `ldaMdl`.

The function fits the Dirichlet prior  $\alpha = \alpha_0(p_1 \ p_2 \ \dots \ p_K)$  on the topic mixtures, where  $\alpha_0$  is the topic concentration and  $p_1, \dots, p_K$  are the corpus topic probabilities which sum to 1.

Example: `'FitTopicProbabilities', true`

Data Types: `logical`

### **LogLikelihoodTolerance – Relative tolerance on log-likelihood**

`0.0001 (default) | positive scalar`

Relative tolerance on log-likelihood, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'LogLikelihoodTolerance'` and a positive scalar. The optimization terminates when this tolerance is reached.

Example: `'LogLikelihoodTolerance', 0.001`

### **Batch Solver Options**

#### **IterationLimit – Maximum number of iterations**

`100 (default) | positive integer`

Maximum number of iterations, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'IterationLimit'` and a positive integer.

This option supports models fitted with batch solvers only (`'cgs'`, `'avb'`, and `'cvb0'`).

Example: `'IterationLimit', 200`

### **Stochastic Solver Options**

#### **DataPassLimit – Maximum number of passes through data**

`1 (default) | positive integer`

Maximum number of passes through the data, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'DataPassLimit' and a positive integer.

If you specify 'DataPassLimit' but not 'MiniBatchLimit', then the default value of 'MiniBatchLimit' is ignored. If you specify both 'DataPassLimit' and 'MiniBatchLimit', then `resume` uses the argument that results in processing the fewest observations.

This option supports models fitted with stochastic solvers only ('savb').

Example: 'DataPassLimit',2

### **MiniBatchLimit — Maximum number of mini-batch passes**

positive integer

Maximum number of mini-batch passes, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'MiniBatchLimit' and a positive integer.

If you specify 'MiniBatchLimit' but not 'DataPassLimit', then `resume` ignores the default value of 'DataPassLimit'. If you specify both 'MiniBatchLimit' and 'DataPassLimit', then `resume` uses the argument that results in processing the fewest observations. The default value is  $\text{ceil}(\text{numDocuments}/\text{MiniBatchSize})$ , where `numDocuments` is the number of input documents.

This option supports models fitted with stochastic solvers only ('savb').

Example: 'MiniBatchLimit',200

### **MiniBatchSize — Mini-batch size**

1000 (default) | positive integer

Mini-batch size, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'MiniBatchLimit' and a positive integer. The function processes `MiniBatchSize` documents in each iteration.

This option supports models fitted with stochastic solvers only ('savb').

Example: 'MiniBatchSize',512

### **Display Options**

#### **ValidationData — Validation data**

[] (default) | bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object | sparse matrix of word counts

Validation data to monitor optimization convergence, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'ValidationData' and a `bagOfWords` object, a `bagOfNgrams` object, or a sparse matrix of word counts. If the validation data is a matrix, then the data must have the same orientation and the same number of words as the input documents.

### **Verbose — Verbosity level**

1 (default) | 0

Verbosity level, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Verbose' and one of the following:

- 0 - Do not display verbose output.
- 1 - Display progress information.

Example: 'Verbose',0

## **Output Arguments**

### **updatedMdl — Updated LDA model**

`LdaModel` object (default)

Updated LDA model, returned as an `LdaModel` object.

## **See Also**

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `fitlda` | `LdaModel` | `logp` | `predict` | `transform` | `wordcloud`

## **Topics**

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

“Choose Number of Topics for LDA Model”

“Compare LDA Solvers”

“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

### **Introduced in R2017b**

# splitGraphemes

Split string into graphemes

## Syntax

```
newStr = splitGraphemes(str)
```

## Description

`newStr = splitGraphemes(str)` splits the string `str` into graphemes. A grapheme (also known as grapheme cluster) is the Unicode term for human-perceived characters.

## Examples

### Split Text into Graphemes

Split text into graphemes using the `splitGraphemes` function.

A grapheme (also known as grapheme clusters) is the Unicode term for human-perceived characters. Some graphemes contain multiple code units. For example, the "smiling face with sunglasses" emoji (☺️ with code point U+1F60E) is a single grapheme but comprises two UTF16 code units "D83D" and "DE0E".

Split the text "Smile! ☺️" into graphemes.

```
str = "Smile! " + compose("\xD83D\xDE0E")
```

```
str =  
"Smile! ☺️"
```

```
newStr = splitGraphemes(str)
```

```
newStr = 8x1 string array  
"S"  
"m"
```

```
"i"  
"l"  
"e"  
"!"  
" "  
"👉"
```

Here, the function does not split the emoji into multiple characters.

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. For string array and cell array input, each element of `str` must have the same number of graphemes.

If the number of graphemes is not the same for every element of `str`, then call the function in a for-loop to split the elements of `str` one at a time.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Split graphemes

string array | cell array of character vectors

Split graphemes, returned as a string array or a cell array of character vectors. If `str` is a string array, then `newStr` is also a string array. Otherwise, `newStr` is a cell array of character vectors.

The size of `newStr` depends on the input:

- If `str` is a string scalar or a character vector, then `newStr` is an `numGraphemes`-by-1 string array or cell array, where `numGraphemes` is the number of graphemes.
- If `str` is an `M`-by-1 string array or cell array, then `newStr` is a `M`-by-`numGraphemes` array.

- If `str` is a 1-by-N string array or cell array, then `newStr` is a 1-by-N-by-numGraphemes array.

For a string array or cell array of any size, the function orients the split graphemes along the first trailing dimension with size 1.

### See Also

`editDistance` | `editDistanceSearcher` | `knnsearch` | `rangesearch` | `split` | `tokenizedDocument`

### Topics

“Correct Spelling Using Edit Distance Searchers”  
“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

**Introduced in R2019a**

# splitSentences

Split text into sentences

## Syntax

```
newStr = splitSentences(str)
```

## Description

`newStr = splitSentences(str)` splits `str` into an array of sentences.

## Examples

### Split Text into Sentences

Read the text from the example file `sonnets.txt` and split it into sentences.

```
filename = "sonnets.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
sentences = splitSentences(str);
```

View the first few sentences.

```
sentences(1:10)
```

```
ans = 10x1 string array  
"THE SONNETS"  
"by William Shakespeare"  
"I"  
"From fairest creatures we desire increase,..."  
"II"  
"When forty winters shall besiege thy brow,..."  
"How much more praise deserv'd thy beauty's use,..."  
"This were to be new made when thou art old,..."  
"III"
```

"Look in thy glass and tell the face thou viewest..."

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string scalar | character vector | scalar cell array containing a character vector

Input text, specified as a string scalar, a character vector, or a scalar cell array containing a character vector.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Output Arguments

### **newStr** — Output text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Output text, returned as a string array, a character vector, or cell array of character vectors. `str` and `newStr` have the same data type.

## Algorithms

If emoticons or emoji characters appear after a terminating punctuation character, then the function splits the sentence after the emoticons and emoji.

## See Also

`addSentenceDetails` | `corpusLanguage` | `decodeHTMLEntities` |  
`erasePunctuation` | `eraseTags` | `eraseURLs` | `lower` | `tokenizedDocument` | `upper`

## Topics

"Prepare Text Data for Analysis"

"Create Simple Text Model for Classification"

"Language Considerations"



**Introduced in R2018a**

## stopWords

List of stop words

### Syntax

```
words = stopWords  
words = stopWords( 'Language' , language)
```

### Description

Words like "a", "and", "to", and "the" (known as stop words) can add noise to data. Use stop word lists to help create custom lists of words to remove before analysis.

To remove the default list of stop words from tokenized documents using the language details of the documents, use `removeStopWords`. To remove a custom list of words from tokenized documents, use `removeWords`.

The function returns English, Japanese, German, and Korean stop word lists.

`words = stopWords` returns a string array of common English words which can be removed from documents before analysis.

`words = stopWords( 'Language' , language)` specifies the stop word language.

### Examples

#### Remove Custom List of Stop Words from Documents

To remove the default list of stop words using the language details of documents, use `removeStopWords`.

To remove a custom list of stop words, use the `removeWords` function. You can use the stop word list returned by the `stopWords` function as a starting point.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

View the first few documents.

```
documents(1:5)
```

```
ans =
```

```
5x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die r
71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega
61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants sa
```

Create a list of stop words starting with the output of the `stopWords` function.

```
customStopWords = [stopWords "thy" "thee" "thou" "dost" "doth"];
```

Remove the custom stop words from the documents and view the first few documents.

```
documents = removeWords(documents,customStopWords);
documents(1:5)
```

```
ans =
```

```
5x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
62 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die r
61 tokens: forty winters shall besiege brow dig deep trenches beautys field youths
52 tokens: look glass tell face viewest time face form another whose fresh repair r
52 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why spend upon self beautys legacy natures bequest
59 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye dwell play tyrants same un
```

## List of English Stop Words

Get a list of English stop words using the `stopWords` function. For readability, reshape the output.

```
words = stopWords;  
reshape(words,[25 9])
```

```
ans = 25x9 string array  
Columns 1 through 6
```

"a"	"but"	"during"	"hows"	"it's"	"said"
"about"	"by"	"each"	"however"	"it's"	"says"
"above"	"can"	"either"	"i"	"its"	"see"
"across"	"can't"	"for"	"i'd"	"let's"	"she"
"after"	"can't"	"from"	"i'd"	"let's"	"she'd"
"all"	"cant"	"given"	"i'll"	"lets"	"she'd"
"along"	"cannot"	"had"	"i'll"	"may"	"shed"
"also"	"could"	"has"	"i'm"	"me"	"she'll"
"am"	"couldn't"	"have"	"i'm"	"more"	"she'll"
"an"	"couldn't"	"having"	"im"	"most"	"shell"
"and"	"couldnt"	"he"	"i've"	"much"	"should"
"any"	"did"	"he'd"	"i've"	"must"	"since"
"are"	"didn't"	"he'd"	"ive"	"my"	"so"
"aren't"	"didn't"	"hed"	"if"	"no"	"some"
"aren't"	"didnt"	"he'll"	"in"	"not"	"such"
"arent"	"do"	"he'll"	"instead"	"now"	"than"
"as"	"does"	"her"	"into"	"of"	"that"
"at"	"doesn't"	"here"	"is"	"on"	"the"
"be"	"doesn't"	"hers"	"isn't"	"one"	"their"
"because"	"doesnt"	"him"	"isn't"	"only"	"them"
"been"	"doing"	"himself"	"isnt"	"or"	"then"
"before"	"done"	"his"	"it"	"other"	"there"
"being"	"don't"	"how"	"it'll"	"our"	"therefore"
"between"	"don't"	"how's"	"it'll"	"out"	"these"
"both"	"dont"	"how's"	"itll"	"over"	"they"

```
Columns 7 through 9
```

"this"	"we're"	"who've"
"those"	"we've"	"whove"
"through"	"we've"	"will"
"to"	"weve"	"with"
"too"	"were"	"within"
"towards"	"what"	"without"

"under"	"what's"	"won't"
"until"	"what's"	"won't"
"us"	"whats"	"would"
"use"	"when"	"wouldn't"
"used"	"when's"	"wouldn't"
"uses"	"when's"	"you"
"using"	"whens"	"you'd"
"very"	"where"	"you'd"
"want"	"whether"	"youd"
"was"	"which"	"you'll"
"wasn't"	"while"	"you'll"
"wasn't"	"who"	"youll"
"wasnt"	"who'll"	"you're"
"we"	"who'll"	"you're"
"we'd"	"wholl"	"youre"
"we'd"	"who's"	"you've"
"we'll"	"who's"	"you've"
"we'll"	"whos"	"youve"
"we're"	"who've"	"your"

## List of Japanese Stop Words

Get a list of Japanese stop words using the `stopWords` function. For readability, reshape the output.

```
words = stopWords('Language','ja');
reshape([words strings(1,8)], [35 11])
```

```
ans = 35x11 string array
Columns 1 through 7
```

"あそこ"	"さらい"	"なかば"	"下"	"今"	"地"	"列"
"あたり"	"さん"	"なに"	"字"	"部"	"員"	"事"
"あちら"	"しかた"	"など"	"年"	"課"	"線"	"士"
"あっち"	"しよう"	"なん"	"月"	"係"	"点"	"台"
"あと"	"すか"	"はじめ"	"日"	"外"	"書"	"集"
"あな"	"ずつ"	"はず"	"時"	"類"	"品"	"様"
"あなた"	"すね"	"はるか"	"分"	"達"	"力"	"所"
"あれ"	"すべて"	"ひと"	"秒"	"気"	"法"	"歴"
"いくつ"	"ぜんぶ"	"ひとつ"	"週"	"室"	"感"	"器"
"いつ"	"そう"	"ふく"	"火"	"口"	"作"	"名"

# 1 Functions — Alphabetical List

"いま"	"そこ"	"ぶり"	"水"	"誰"	"元"	"情"
"いや"	"そちら"	"べつ"	"木"	"用"	"手"	"連"
"いろいろ"	"そっち"	"へん"	"金"	"界"	"数"	"毎"
"うち"	"そで"	"ぺん"	"土"	"会"	"彼"	"式"
"おおまか"	"それ"	"ほう"	"国"	"首"	"彼女"	"簿"
"おまえ"	"それぞれ"	"ほか"	"都"	"男"	"子"	"回"
"おれ"	"それなり"	"まさ"	"道"	"女"	"内"	"匹"
"がい"	"たくさん"	"まし"	"府"	"別"	"楽"	"個"
"かく"	"たち"	"まとも"	"県"	"話"	"喜"	"席"
"かたち"	"たび"	"まま"	"市"	"私"	"怒"	"束"
"かやの"	"ため"	"みたい"	"区"	"屋"	"哀"	"歳"
"から"	"だめ"	"みつ"	"町"	"店"	"輪"	"目"
"がら"	"ちゃ"	"みなさん"	"村"	"家"	"頃"	"通"
"きた"	"ちゃん"	"みんな"	"各"	"場"	"化"	"面"
"くせ"	"てん"	"もと"	"第"	"等"	"境"	"円"
"ここ"	"とおり"	"もの"	"方"	"見"	"俺"	"玉"
"こっち"	"とき"	"もん"	"何"	"際"	"奴"	"枚"
"こと"	"どこ"	"やつ"	"的"	"観"	"高"	"前"
"ごと"	"どこか"	"よう"	"度"	"段"	"校"	"後"
"こちら"	"ところ"	"よそ"	"文"	"略"	"婦"	"左"

## Columns 8 through 11

"秋"	"本当"	"う"	"どう"
"冬"	"確か"	"え"	"な"
"一"	"時点"	"お"	"ない"
"二"	"全部"	"か"	"なり"
"三"	"関係"	"が"	"なる"
"四"	"近く"	"こそ"	"に"
"五"	"方法"	"この"	"ね"
"六"	"我々"	"さ"	"の"
"七"	"違い"	"さえ"	"ので"
"八"	"多く"	"し"	"のに"
"九"	"扱い"	"しか"	"は"
"十"	"新た"	"する"	"ばかり"
"百"	"その後"	"ず"	"へ"
"千"	"半ば"	"せる"	"ほど"
"万"	"結局"	"そして"	"ます"
"億"	"様々"	"その"	"ませ"
"兆"	"以前"	"た"	"また"
"下記"	"以後"	"たい"	"まで"
"上記"	"以降"	"ただ"	"も"
"時間"	"未滿"	"だ"	"や"
"今回"	"以上"	"だけ"	"やら"

"前回"	"以下"	"だに"	"よ"
"場合"	"幾つ"	"だの"	"より"
"一つ"	"毎日"	"ち"	"れる"
"年生"	"自体"	"って"	"わ"
"自分"	"向こう"	"て"	"を"
"ヶ所"	"何人"	"で"	"ん"
"カ所"	"手段"	"でし"	" "
"カ所"	"同じ"	"です"	" "
"箇所"	"感じ"	"では"	" "
⋮			

### List of German Stop Words

Get a list of German stop words using the `stopWords` function. For readability, reshape the output.

```
words = stopWords('Language', 'de');
reshape([words strings(1,7)], [25 8])
```

```
ans = 25x8 string array
Columns 1 through 6
```

"ab"	"dann"	"doch"	"hattet"	"jene"	"mein"
"aber"	"das"	"du"	"her"	"jenem"	"meine"
"alle"	"dass"	"durch"	"hin"	"jenen"	"meinem"
"allem"	"daß"	"ein"	"hätte"	"jener"	"meinen"
"allen"	"dein"	"eine"	"hättest"	"jenes"	"meiner"
"aller"	"deine"	"einem"	"hättet"	"kann"	"meines"
"alles"	"deinem"	"einen"	"ich"	"kannst"	"mich"
"als"	"deiner"	"einer"	"ihm"	"kein"	"mir"
"also"	"deines"	"eines"	"ihn"	"keine"	"mit"
"am"	"dem"	"er"	"ihr"	"keinem"	"muss"
"an"	"den"	"es"	"ihre"	"keinen"	"musst"
"andere"	"denn"	"euch"	"ihrem"	"keiner"	"musste"
"anderem"	"der"	"euer"	"ihren"	"keines"	"muß"
"anderen"	"derer"	"eure"	"ihrer"	"können"	"müssen"
"anderer"	"des"	"eurem"	"ihres"	"könnte"	"müssten"
"anderes"	"dessen"	"euren"	"im"	"könnten"	"nach"
"auch"	"dich"	"eures"	"in"	"könntest"	"nicht"
"auf"	"die"	"für"	"ins"	"ließ"	"nichts"
"aus"	"dies"	"ganz"	"ist"	"man"	"noch"

"bei"	"diese"	"gar"	"ja"	"manche"	"nun"
"bin"	"diesem"	"habe"	"jede"	"manchem"	"nur"
"bis"	"diesen"	"haben"	"jedem"	"manchen"	"ob"
"bist"	"dieser"	"hat"	"jeden"	"mancher"	"oder"
"da"	"dieses"	"hatte"	"jeder"	"manches"	"seid"
"damit"	"dir"	"hattest"	"jedes"	"mehr"	"sein"

Columns 7 through 8

"seine"	"welcher"
"seinem"	"welches"
"seinen"	"wenn"
"seiner"	"wer"
"seines"	"werde"
"sich"	"werden"
"sie"	"weshalb"
"sind"	"wie"
"so"	"wieder"
"um"	"wieso"
"und"	"wir"
"uns"	"wirst"
"unter"	"wo"
"vom"	"während"
"von"	"zu"
"vor"	"zum"
"war"	"zur"
"waren"	"über"
"warst"	" "
"warum"	" "
"was"	" "
"weil"	" "
"welche"	" "
"welchem"	" "
"welchen"	" "

## Input Arguments

### Language — Stop word language

'en' (default) | 'ja' | 'de' | 'ko'

Stop word language, specified as one of the following:



- 'en' - English
- 'ja' - Japanese
- 'de' - German
- 'ko' - Korean

For more information about language support in Text Analytics Toolbox, see “Language Considerations”.

## More About

### Language Considerations

The `stopWords` and `removeStopWords` functions support English, Japanese, German, and Korean stop words only.

To remove stop words from other languages, use `removeWords` and specify your own stop words to remove.

### See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `normalizeWords` | `removeLongWords` | `removeShortWords` | `removeStopWords` | `removeWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

### Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”  
“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”  
“Language Considerations”  
“Japanese Language Support”  
“German Language Support”

### Introduced in R2017b

## string

Convert scalar document to string vector

### Syntax

```
words = string(document)
```

### Description

`words = string(document)` converts a scalar `tokenizedDocument` to a string array of words.

### Examples

#### Convert Document to String

Convert a scalar tokenized document to a string array of words.

```
document = tokenizedDocument("an example of a short sentence")
```

```
document =  
    tokenizedDocument:  
        6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
```

```
words = string(document)
```

```
words = 1x6 string array  
    "an"    "example"    "of"    "a"    "short"    "sentence"
```

## Input Arguments

### **document** — Input document

scalar `tokenizedDocument`

Input document, specified as a scalar `tokenizedDocument` object.

## Output Arguments

### **words** — Output words

string vector

Output words, returned as a string vector.

## See Also

`context` | `doc2cell` | `doclength` | `joinWords` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

## textscatter

2-D scatter plot of text

### Syntax

```
ts = textscatter(x,y,str)
ts = textscatter(xy,str)
ts = textscatter(ax, ___)
ts = textscatter( ___,Name,Value)
```

### Description

`ts = textscatter(x,y,str)` creates a text scatter plot with elements of `str` at the locations specified by the vectors `x` and `y`, and returns the resulting `TextScatter` object.

`ts = textscatter(xy,str)` uses locations specified by the rows of `xy`. This syntax is equivalent to `textscatter(xy(:,1),xy(:,2),str)`.

`ts = textscatter(ax, ___)` plots into axes `ax`. You can use any input arguments from previous syntaxes.

`ts = textscatter( ___,Name,Value)` specifies additional `TextScatter` properties using one or more name-value pair arguments.

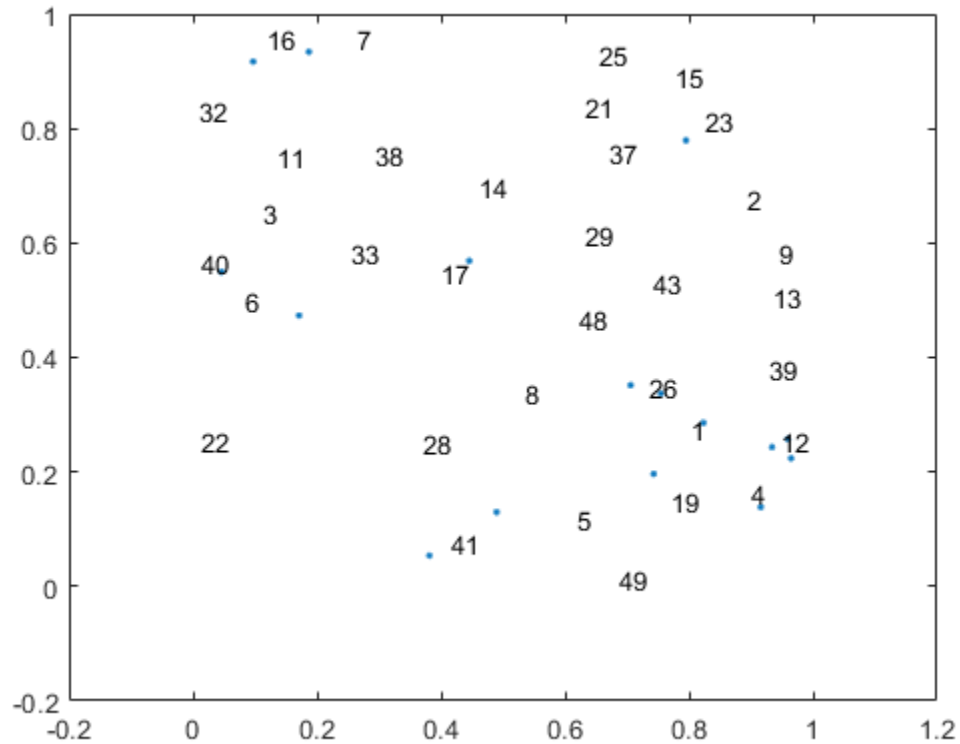
### Examples

#### Create Text Scatter Plot

Plot a string array of numbers at random points on a text scatter plot.

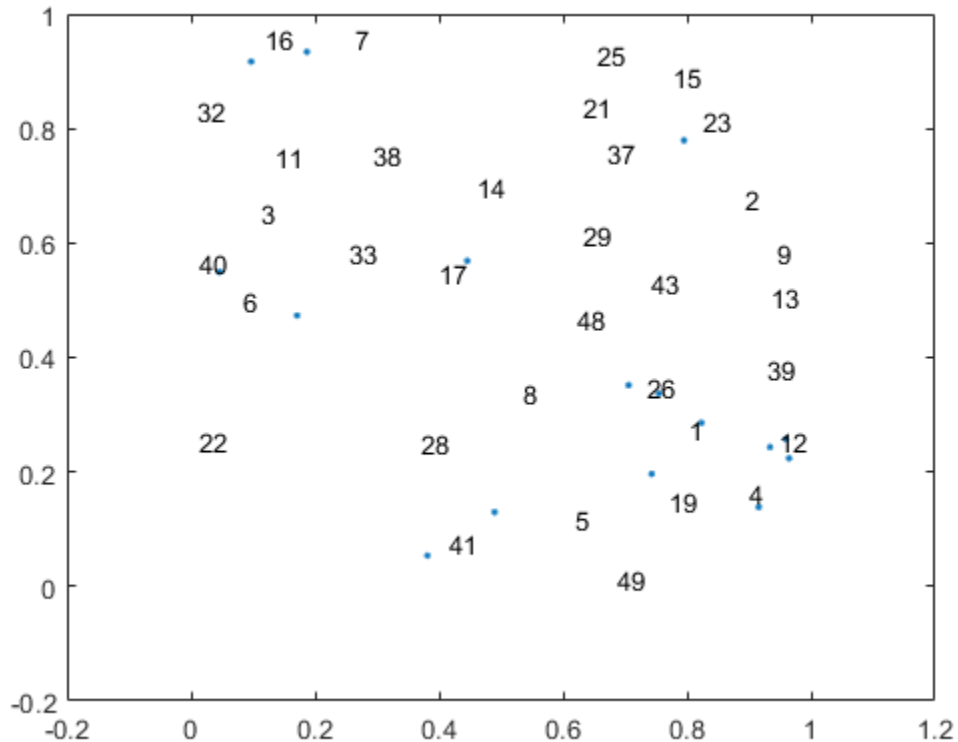
```
x = rand(50,1);
y = rand(50,1);
str = string(1:50);
```

```
figure  
textscatter(x,y,str);
```



Alternatively, you can pass the coordinates  $x$  and  $y$  as a matrix  $xy$ , where  $x$  and  $y$  are the columns of  $xy$ .

```
xy = [x y];  
figure  
textscatter(xy,str)
```



## Specify Word Colors

Create text scatter plot of a word embedding and specify word colors.

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
```

```
emb =  
    wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 300  
Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

Convert the first 500 words to vectors using `word2vec`. `V` is a matrix of word vectors of length 300.

```
words = emb.Vocabulary(1:500);  
V = word2vec(emb,words);  
size(V)
```

```
ans = 1×2
```

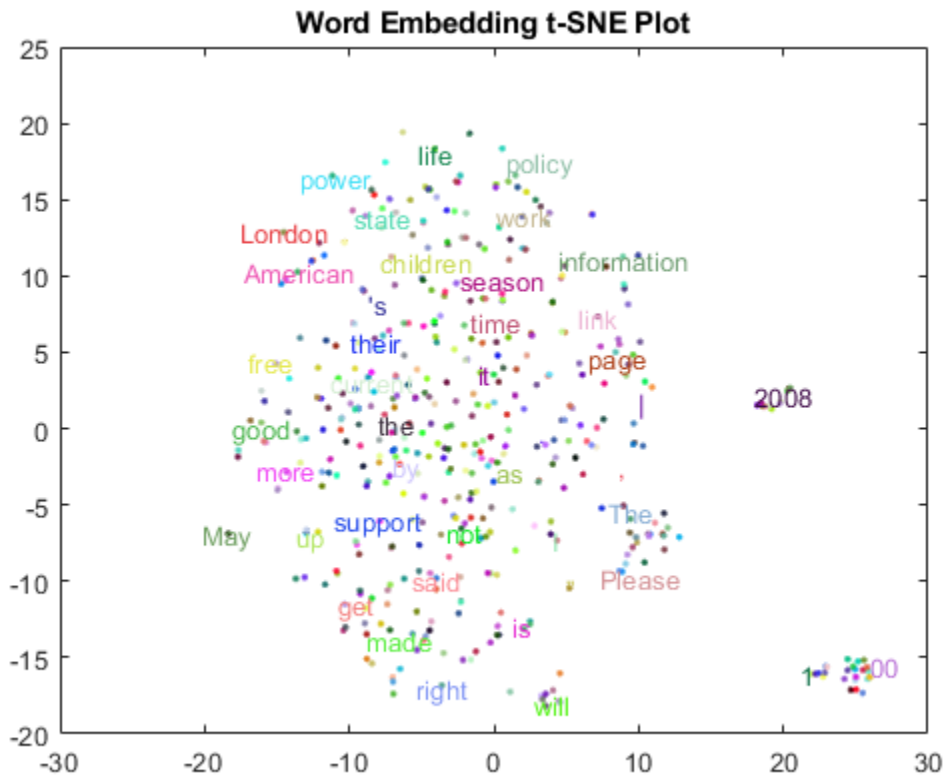
```
500 300
```

Embed the word vectors in two-dimensional space using `tsne`.

```
XY = tsne(V);
```

Plot the words at the coordinates specified by `XY` in a 2-D text scatter plot. Specify the word colors to be random.

```
numWords = numel(words);  
colorData = rand(numWords,3);  
figure  
textscatter(XY,words,'ColorData',colorData)  
title("Word Embedding t-SNE Plot")
```



## Input Arguments

### **x — x values**

vector

x values, specified as a vector. x, y, and str must be of equal length.

Example: [1 2 3]

### **y — y values**

vector



`y` values, specified as a vector. `x`, `y`, and `str` must be of equal length.

Example: [1 2 3]

### **xy — x and y values**

matrix

`x` and `y` values, specified as a matrix with two columns. `xy(i,1)` and `xy(i,2)` correspond to the `x` and `y` values of the `i`th element of `str`, respectively. `xy` must have the `numel(str)` rows.

`textscatter(xy, str)` is equivalent to `textscatter(xy(:,1), xy(:,2), str)`.

Example: [1 2 3]

### **str — Input text**

string vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array or cell array of character vectors. `x`, `y`, and `str` must be of equal length.

Example: ["one" "two" "three"]

Data Types: string | cell

### **ax — Axes object**

axes object

Axes object. If you do not specify an axes object, then the function uses the current axes.

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name, Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: 'Marker', '\*' specifies the markers to be asterisks.

The `TextScatter` object properties listed here are only a subset. For a complete list, see `TextScatter Properties`.

### **TextDensityPercentage — Percentage of text data to show**

60 (default) | scalar from 0 through 100

Percentage of text data to show, specified as a scalar from 0 through 100. To show all text, set `TextDensityPercentage` to 100. To show no text, set `TextDensityPercentage` to 0.

If you set `TextDensityPercentage` to 100, then the software does not plot markers.

Example: 70

### **MaxTextLength — Maximum length of text labels**

40 (default) | positive integer

Maximum length of text labels, specified as a positive integer. The software truncates the text labels to this length and adds ellipses at the point of truncation.

Example: 10

### **MarkerColor — Marker colors**

'auto' (default) | 'none' | RGB triplet

Marker colors, specified as one of these values:

- 'auto' — For each marker, use the same color as the corresponding text labels.
- 'none' — Do not show markers.
- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the markers in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range  $[0, 1]$ ; for example,  $[0.5 \ 0.6 \ 0.7]$ .

Example:  $[1 \ 0 \ 0]$

### **ColorData — Text colors**

[] (default) | RGB triplet | matrix of RGB triplets | categorical vector

Text colors, specified as one of these values:

- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the text in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range  $[0, 1]$ ; for example,  $[0.5 \ 0.6 \ 0.7]$ .
- Three-column matrix of RGB triplets — Use a different color for each text label in the plot. Each row of the matrix defines one color. The number of rows must equal the number of text labels.

- **Categorical vector** — Use a different color for each category in the vector. Specify `ColorData` as a vector the same length as `XData`. Specify the colors for each category using the `Colors` property

Example: `[1 0 0; 0 1 0; 0 0 1]`

### **Colors — Category colors**

matrix of RGB triplets

Category colors, specified as a matrix of RGB triplets. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range `[0, 1]`; for example, `[0.5 0.6 0.7]`.

By default, `Colors` is equal to the `ColorOrder` property of the axes object.

Example: `[1 0 0; 0 1 0; 0 0 1]`

## **Output Arguments**

### **ts — TextScatter object**

TextScatter object

TextScatter object. Use `ts` to access and modify properties of the text scatter chart after it has been created. For more information, see [TextScatter Properties](#).

## **See Also**

[fastTextWordEmbedding](#) | [textscatter3](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [word2vec](#) | [wordEmbedding](#) | [wordcloud](#)

## **Topics**

[“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”](#)

[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

### **Introduced in R2017b**

## textscatter3

3-D scatter plot of text

### Syntax

```
ts = textscatter3(x,y,z,str)
ts = textscatter3(xyz,str)
ts = textscatter3(ax, ___)
ts = textscatter3( ___,Name,Value)
```

### Description

`ts = textscatter3(x,y,z,str)` creates a 3-D text scatter plot with elements of `str` at the locations specified by the vectors `x`, `y`, and `z`.

`ts = textscatter3(xyz,str)` creates a 3-D text scatter plot with elements of `str` at the locations specified by the rows of `xyz`. This syntax is equivalent to `textscatter(xyz(:,1),xyz(:,2),xyz(:,3),str)`.

`ts = textscatter3(ax, ___)` plots into axes object `ax`. Use this syntax with any of the input arguments in previous syntaxes.

`ts = textscatter3( ___,Name,Value)` specifies additional `TextScatter` properties using one or more name-value pair arguments.

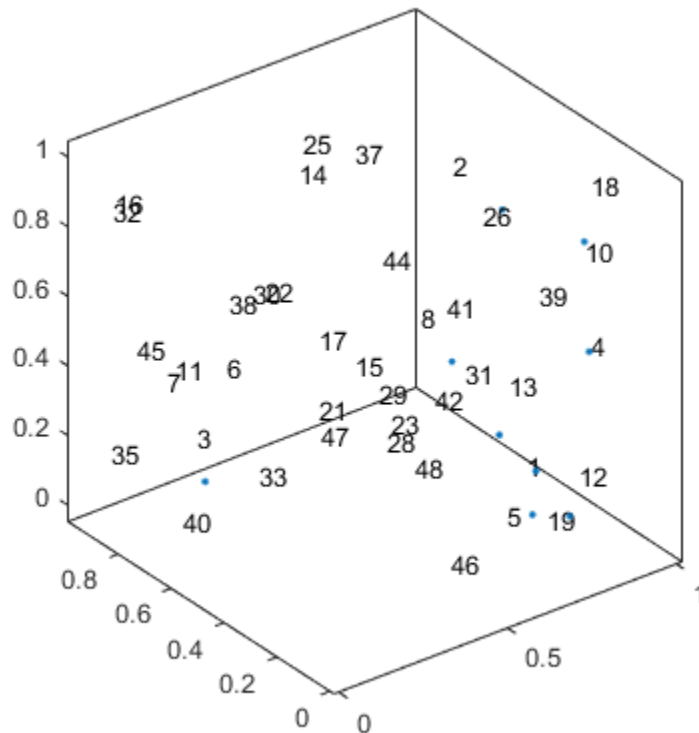
### Examples

#### Create 3-D Text Scatter Plot

Plot a string array of numbers at random points on a 3-D text scatter plot.

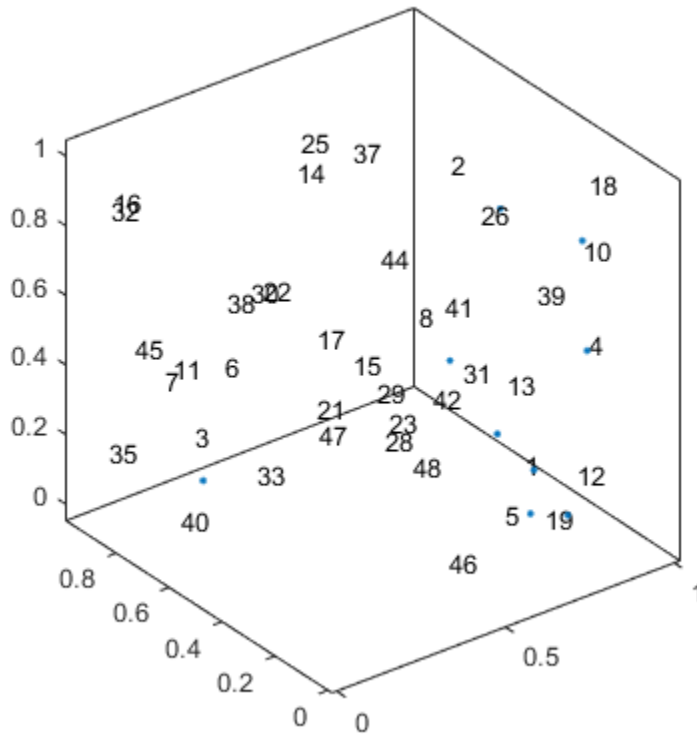
```
x = rand(50,1);
y = rand(50,1);
z = rand(50,1);
```

```
str = string(1:50);  
figure  
textscatter3(x,y,z,str);
```



Alternatively, you can pass the coordinates  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  as a matrix  $xyz$ , where  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  are the columns of  $xyz$ .

```
xyz = [x y z];  
figure  
textscatter3(xyz,str)
```



### Specify Word Colors

Create text scatter plot of a word embedding and specify word colors.

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Convert the first 250 words to vectors using `word2vec`. `V` is a matrix of word vectors of length 300.

```
words = emb.Vocabulary(1:250);  
V = word2vec(emb,words);  
size(V)
```

```
ans = 1×2
```

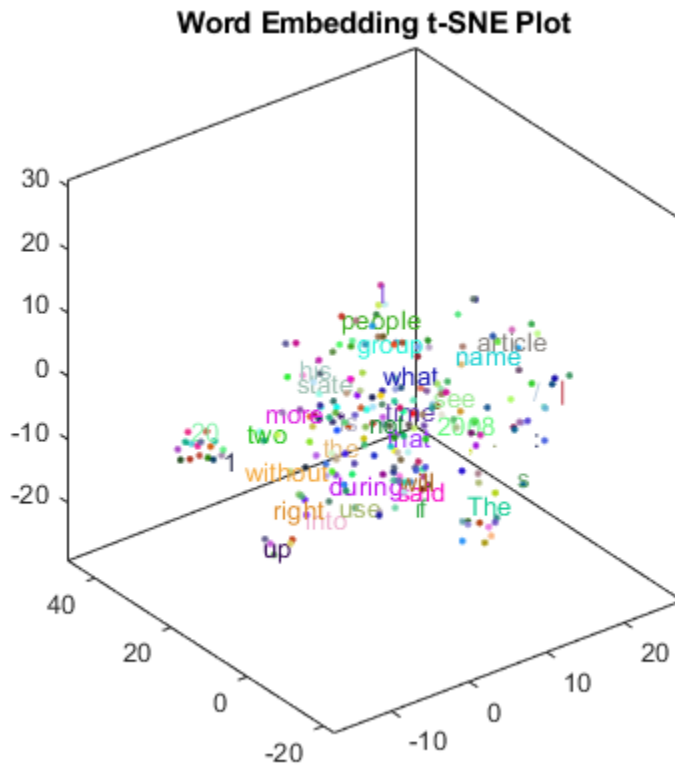
```
    250    300
```

Embed the word vectors in a 3-D space using `tsne`.

```
XYZ = tsne(V, 'NumDimensions',3);
```

Plot the words at the coordinates specified by `XYZ` in a 3-D text scatter plot. Specify the word colors to be random.

```
numWords = numel(words);  
colorData = rand(numWords,3);  
figure  
textscatter3(XYZ,words, 'ColorData',colorData)  
title("Word Embedding t-SNE Plot")
```



## Input Arguments

### **x — x values**

vector

x values, specified as a vector. x, y, z, and str must be of equal length.

Example: [1 2 3]

### **y — y values**

vector



`y` values, specified as a vector. `x`, `y`, `z`, and `str` must be of equal length.

Example: [1 2 3]

### **z — z values**

vector

`z` values, specified as a vector. `x`, `y`, `z`, and `str` must be of equal length.

Example: [1 2 3]

### **xyz — x, y, and z values**

matrix

`x`, `y`, and `z` values, specified as a matrix. The first, second, and third columns of `xyz` correspond to the `x`, `y`, and `z` values, respectively.

### **str — Input text**

string vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array or cell array of character vectors. `x`, `y`, `z`, and `str` must be of equal length.

Example: ["one" "two" "three"]

Data Types: string | cell

### **ax — Axes object**

axes object

Axes object. If you do not specify an axes object, then the function uses the current axes.

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: 'Marker', '\*' specifies the markers to be asterisks.

The `TextScatter` object properties listed here are only a subset. For a complete list, see `TextScatter Properties`.

## **TextDensityPercentage — Percentage of text data to show**

60 (default) | scalar from 0 through 100

Percentage of text data to show, specified as a scalar from 0 through 100. To show all text, set `TextDensityPercentage` to 100. To show no text, set `TextDensityPercentage` to 0.

If you set `TextDensityPercentage` to 100, then the software does not plot markers.

Example: 70

## **MaxTextLength — Maximum length of text labels**

40 (default) | positive integer

Maximum length of text labels, specified as a positive integer. The software truncates the text labels to this length and adds ellipses at the point of truncation.

Example: 10

## **MarkerColor — Marker colors**

'auto' (default) | 'none' | RGB triplet

Marker colors, specified as one of these values:

- 'auto' — For each marker, use the same color as the corresponding text labels.
- 'none' — Do not show markers.
- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the markers in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range  $[0, 1]$ ; for example,  $[0.5 \ 0.6 \ 0.7]$ .

Example:  $[1 \ 0 \ 0]$

## **ColorData — Text colors**

[] (default) | RGB triplet | matrix of RGB triplets | categorical vector

Text colors, specified as one of these values:

- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the text in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range  $[0, 1]$ ; for example,  $[0.5 \ 0.6 \ 0.7]$ .

- Three-column matrix of RGB triplets — Use a different color for each text label in the plot. Each row of the matrix defines one color. The number of rows must equal the number of text labels.
- Categorical vector — Use a different color for each category in the vector. Specify `ColorData` as a vector the same length as `XData`. Specify the colors for each category using the `Colors` property

Example: `[1 0 0; 0 1 0; 0 0 1]`

### **Colors — Category colors**

matrix of RGB triplets

Category colors, specified as a matrix of RGB triplets. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range `[0, 1]`; for example, `[0.5 0.6 0.7]`.

By default, `Colors` is equal to the `ColorOrder` property of the axes object.

Example: `[1 0 0; 0 1 0; 0 0 1]`

## **Output Arguments**

### **ts — TextScatter object**

TextScatter object

TextScatter object. Use `ts` to access and modify properties of the text scatter chart after it has been created. For more information, see [TextScatter Properties](#).

## **See Also**

[fastTextWordEmbedding](#) | [textscatter](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [word2vec](#) | [wordEmbedding](#) | [wordcloud](#)

## **Topics**

“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# TextScatter Properties

Control text scatter chart appearance and behavior

## Description

TextScatter properties control the appearance and behavior of TextScatter object. By changing property values, you can modify certain aspects of the text scatter chart.

## Properties

### Text

#### **TextData — Text labels**

string array | cell array of character vectors

Text labels, specified as a string array, or a cell array of character vectors.

Example: ["word1" "word2" "word3"]

Data Types: string | cell

#### **TextDensityPercentage — Percentage of text data to show**

60 (default) | scalar from 0 through 100

Percentage of text data to show, specified as a scalar from 0 through 100. To show all text, set TextDensityPercentage to 100. To show no text, set TextDensityPercentage to 0.

If you set TextDensityPercentage to 100, then the software does not plot markers.

Example: 70

#### **MaxTextLength — Maximum length of text labels**

40 (default) | positive integer

Maximum length of text labels, specified as a positive integer. The software truncates the text labels to this length and adds ellipses at the point of truncation.

Example: 10

## Font Style

### FontName — Font name

system supported font name | 'FixedWidth'

Font name, specified as the name of the font to use or 'FixedWidth'. To display and print properly, the font name must be a font that your system supports. The default font depends on the specific operating system and locale.

To use a fixed-width font that looks good in any locale, use 'FixedWidth'. The 'FixedWidth' value relies on the root `FixedWidthFontName` property. Setting the root `FixedWidthFontName` property causes an immediate update of the display to use the new font.

Example: 'Cambria'

### FontSize — Font size

10 (default) | scalar value greater than zero

Font size, specified as a scalar value greater than zero in point units. One point equals 1/72 inch. To change the font units, use the `FontUnits` property.

Example: 12

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

### FontAngle — Character slant

'normal' (default) | 'italic'

Character slant, specified as 'normal' or 'italic'. Not all fonts have both font styles. Therefore, the italic font might look the same as the normal font.

### FontWeight — Thickness of text characters

'normal' (default) | 'bold'

Thickness of the text characters, specified as one of these values:

- 'normal' — Default weight as defined by the particular font
- 'bold' — Thicker character outlines than normal

MATLAB uses the `FontWeight` property to select a font from those available on your system. Not all fonts have a bold font weight. Therefore, specifying a bold font weight still can result in the normal font weight.

**FontSmoothing — Smooth font character appearance**`'on'` (default) | `'off'`

Smooth font character appearance, specified as one of these values:

- `'on'` — Apply font smoothing. Reduce the appearance of jaggedness in the text characters to make the text easier to read.
- `'off'` — Do not apply font smoothing.







**Text Box****EdgeColor — Color of box outline**`'none'` (default) | RGB triplet | character vector of color name



Color of box outline, specified as `'none'`, a three-element RGB triplet, or a character vector of a color name. The default edge color of `'none'` makes the box outline invisible.

RGB triplets and hexadecimal color codes are useful for specifying custom colors.

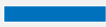






- An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range  $[0, 1]$ ; for example,  $[0.4 \ 0.6 \ 0.7]$ .
- A hexadecimal color code is a character vector or a string scalar that starts with a hash symbol (`#`) followed by three or six hexadecimal digits, which can range from `0` to `F`. The values are not case sensitive. Thus, the color codes `'#FF8800'`, `'#ff8800'`, `'#F80'`, and `'#f80'` are equivalent.

Alternatively, you can specify some common colors by name. This table lists the named color options, the equivalent RGB triplets, and hexadecimal color codes.

Color Name	Short Name	RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
<code>'red'</code>	<code>'r'</code>	$[1 \ 0 \ 0]$	<code>'#FF0000'</code>	
<code>'green'</code>	<code>'g'</code>	$[0 \ 1 \ 0]$	<code>'#00FF00'</code>	
<code>'blue'</code>	<code>'b'</code>	$[0 \ 0 \ 1]$	<code>'#0000FF'</code>	
<code>'cyan'</code>	<code>'c'</code>	$[0 \ 1 \ 1]$	<code>'#00FFFF'</code>	
<code>'magenta'</code>	<code>'m'</code>	$[1 \ 0 \ 1]$	<code>'#FF00FF'</code>	
<code>'yellow'</code>	<code>'y'</code>	$[1 \ 1 \ 0]$	<code>'#FFFF00'</code>	

Color Name	Short Name	RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
'black'	'k'	[0 0 0]	'#000000'	
'white'	'w'	[1 1 1]	'#FFFFFF'	

Here are the RGB triplets and hexadecimal color codes for the default colors MATLAB uses in many types of plots.

RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
[0 0.4470 0.7410]	'#0072BD'	
[0.8500 0.3250 0.0980]	'#D95319'	
[0.9290 0.6940 0.1250]	'#EDB120'	
[0.4940 0.1840 0.5560]	'#7E2F8E'	
[0.4660 0.6740 0.1880]	'#77AC30'	
[0.3010 0.7450 0.9330]	'#4DBEEE'	
[0.6350 0.0780 0.1840]	'#A2142F'	

Example: 'blue'

Example: [0 0 1]

### BackgroundColor — Color of text box background

'none' (default) | 'data' | RGB triplet

Color of text box background, specified as one of these values:

- 'none' — Make the text box background transparent.
- 'data' — Use background color specified by `ColorData`. The software automatically chooses a foreground to complement the background color.
- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the markers in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range [0, 1]; for example, [0.5 0.6 0.7].

Example: [1 0 0]

### Margin — Space around text within text box

3 (default) | positive scalar



The space around the text within the text box, specified as a positive scalar in point units.

MATLAB uses the `Extent` property value plus the `Margin` property value to determine the size of the text box.

Example: 8

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

## Markers

### MarkerColor — Marker colors

'auto' (default) | 'none' | RGB triplet

Marker colors, specified as one of these values:

- 'auto' — For each marker, use the same color as the corresponding text labels.
- 'none' — Do not show markers.
- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the markers in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range  $[0, 1]$ ; for example,  $[0.5 \ 0.6 \ 0.7]$ .

Example: `[1 0 0]`

### MarkerSize — Marker size

6 (default) | positive scalar

Marker size, specified as a positive scalar.

Example: 10

## Data

### XData — x values

[] (default) | scalar | vector

x values, specified as a scalar or a vector. The text scatter plot displays an individual marker for each value in `XData`.

The input argument `X` to the `textscatter` and `textscatter3` functions set the x values. `XData` and `YData` must have equal lengths.

Example: [1 2 4 2 6]

Data Types: single | double | int8 | int16 | int32 | int64 | uint8 | uint16 | uint32 | uint64 | categorical | datetime | duration

### **XDataSource — Variable linked to XData**

' ' (default) | character vector containing MATLAB workspace variable name

Variable linked to XData, specified as a character vector containing a MATLAB workspace variable name. MATLAB evaluates the variable in the base workspace to generate the XData.

By default, there is no linked variable so the value is an empty character vector, ' '. If you link a variable, then MATLAB does not update the XData values immediately. To force an update of the data values, use the `refreshdata` function.

---

**Note** If you change one data source property to a variable that contains data of a different dimension, you might cause the function to generate a warning and not render the graph until you have changed all data source properties to appropriate values.

---

Example: 'x'

### **YData — y values**

[] (default) | scalar | vector

y values, specified as a scalar or a vector. The text scatter plot displays an individual marker for each value in YData.

The input argument Y to the `textscatter` and `textscatter3` functions set the y values. XData and YData must have equal lengths.

Example: [1 3 3 4 6]

Data Types: single | double | int8 | int16 | int32 | int64 | uint8 | uint16 | uint32 | uint64 | categorical | datetime | duration

### **YDataSource — Variable linked to YData**

' ' (default) | character vector containing MATLAB workspace variable name

Variable linked to YData, specified as a character vector containing a MATLAB workspace variable name. MATLAB evaluates the variable in the base workspace to generate the YData.

By default, there is no linked variable so the value is an empty character vector, `''`. If you link a variable, then MATLAB does not update the `YData` values immediately. To force an update of the data values, use the `refreshdata` function.

---

**Note** If you change one data source property to a variable that contains data of a different dimension, you might cause the function to generate a warning and not render the graph until you have changed all data source properties to appropriate values.

---

Example: `'y'`

### **ZData — z values**

`[]` (default) | scalar | vector

`z` values, specified as a scalar or a vector.

- For 2-D scatter plots, `ZData` is empty by default.
- For 3-D scatter plots, the input argument `Z` to the `scatter3` function sets the `z` values. `XData`, `YData`, and `ZData` must have equal lengths.

Example: `[1 2 2 1 0]`

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `categorical` | `datetime` | `duration`

### **ZDataSource — Variable linked to ZData**

`''` (default) | character vector containing MATLAB workspace variable name

Variable linked to `ZData`, specified as a character vector containing a MATLAB workspace variable name. MATLAB evaluates the variable in the base workspace to generate the `ZData`.

By default, there is no linked variable so the value is an empty character vector, `''`. If you link a variable, then MATLAB does not update the `ZData` values immediately. To force an update of the data values, use the `refreshdata` function.

---

**Note** If you change one data source property to a variable that contains data of a different dimension, you might cause the function to generate a warning and not render the graph until you have changed all data source properties to appropriate values.

---

Example: 'z'

## **ColorData — Text colors**

[] (default) | RGB triplet | matrix of RGB triplets | categorical vector

Text colors, specified as one of these values:

- RGB triplet — Use the same color for all the text in the plot. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range [0, 1]; for example, [0.5 0.6 0.7].
- Three-column matrix of RGB triplets — Use a different color for each text label in the plot. Each row of the matrix defines one color. The number of rows must equal the number of text labels.
- Categorical vector — Use a different color for each category in the vector. Specify **ColorData** as a vector the same length as **XData**. Specify the colors for each category using the **Colors** property

Example: [1 0 0; 0 1 0; 0 0 1]

## **Colors — Category colors**

matrix of RGB triplets

Category colors, specified as a matrix of RGB triplets. An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range [0, 1]; for example, [0.5 0.6 0.7].

By default, **Colors** is equal to the **ColorOrder** property of the axes object.

Example: [1 0 0; 0 1 0; 0 0 1]

## **Visibility**

### **Visible — State of visibility**

'on' (default) | 'off'

State of visibility, specified as one of these values:

- 'on' — Display the object.
- 'off' — Hide the object without deleting it. You still can access the properties of an invisible object.

## Identifiers

### Type — Type of graphics object

'textscatter'

This property is read-only.

Type of graphics object, returned as 'textscatter'. Use this property to find all objects of a given type within a plotting hierarchy; for example, searching for the type using `findobj`.

### Tag — User-specified tag

' ' (default) | character vector

This property is read-only.

User-specified tag to associate with the object, specified as a character vector. Tags provide a way to identify graphics objects. Use this property to find all objects with a specific tag within a plotting hierarchy; for example, searching for the tag using `findobj`.

Example: 'January Data'

### UserData — Data to associate with object

[] (default) | any MATLAB data

This property is read-only.

Data to associate with the object, specified as any MATLAB data; for example, a scalar, vector, matrix, cell array, character array, table, or structure. MATLAB does not use this data.

To associate multiple sets of data or to attach a field name to the data, use the `getappdata` and `setappdata` functions.

Example: `1:100`

### DisplayName — Text used for legend label

' ' (default) | character vector

This property is read-only.

Text used for the legend label, specified as a character vector. If you do not specify the text, then the legend uses a label of the form 'dataN'. The legend does not display until you call the `legend` command.

Example: 'Label Text'

### **Annotation — Control for including or excluding object from legend**

Annotation object

Control for including or excluding the object from a legend, returned as an `Annotation` object. Set the underlying `IconDisplayStyle` property to one of these values:

- 'on' — Include the object in the legend (default).
- 'off' — Do not include the object in the legend.

For example, exclude a stem chart from the legend.

```
p = plot(1:10, 'DisplayName', 'Line Chart');  
hold on  
s = stem(1:10, 'DisplayName', 'Stem Chart');  
hold off  
s.Annotation.LegendInformation.IconDisplayStyle = 'off';  
legend('show')
```

Alternatively, you can control the items in a legend using the `legend` function. Specify the first input argument as a vector of the graphics objects to include.

```
p = plot(1:10, 'DisplayName', 'Line Chart');  
hold on  
s = stem(1:10, 'DisplayName', 'Stem Chart');  
hold off  
legend(p)
```

### **Parent/Child**

#### **Parent — Parent**

Axes object | PolarAxes object | Group object | Transform object

Parent, specified as an `Axes`, `PolarAxes`, `Group`, or `Transform` object.

#### **Children — Children**

empty `GraphicsPlaceholder` array | `DataTip` object array

Children, returned as an empty `GraphicsPlaceholder` array or a `DataTip` object array. Use this property to view a list of data tips that are plotted on the chart.

You cannot add or remove children using the `Children` property. To add a child to this list, set the `Parent` property of the `DataTip` object to the chart object.

### **HandleVisibility — Visibility of object handle**

'on' (default) | 'off' | 'callback'

Visibility of the object handle in the `Children` property of the parent, specified as one of these values:

- 'on' — Object handle is always visible.
- 'off' — Object handle is invisible at all times. This option is useful for preventing unintended changes to the UI by another function. Set the `HandleVisibility` to 'off' to temporarily hide the handle during the execution of that function.
- 'callback' — Object handle is visible from within callbacks or functions invoked by callbacks, but not from within functions invoked from the command line. This option blocks access to the object at the command-line, but allows callback functions to access it.

If the object is not listed in the `Children` property of the parent, then functions that obtain object handles by searching the object hierarchy or querying handle properties cannot return it. This includes `get`, `findobj`, `gca`, `gcf`, `gco`, `newplot`, `cla`, `clf`, and `close`.

Hidden object handles are still valid. Set the root `ShowHiddenHandles` property to 'on' to list all object handles regardless of their `HandleVisibility` property setting.

### **Interactive Control**

#### **ButtonDownFcn — Mouse-click callback**

' ' (default) | function handle | cell array | character vector

Mouse-click callback, specified as one of these values:

- Function handle
- Cell array containing a function handle and additional arguments
- Character vector that is a valid MATLAB command or function, which is evaluated in the base workspace (not recommended)

Use this property to execute code when you click the object. If you specify this property using a function handle, then MATLAB passes two arguments to the callback function when executing the callback:

- Clicked object — You can access properties of the clicked object from within the callback function.
- Event data — This argument is empty for this property. Replace it with the tilde character (~) in the function definition to indicate that this argument is not used.

For more information on how to use function handles to define callback functions, see “Callback Definition” (MATLAB).

---

**Note** If the `PickableParts` property is set to 'none' or if the `HitTest` property is set to 'off', then this callback does not execute.

---

Example: `@myCallback`

Example: `{@myCallback, arg3}`

### **UIContextMenu — Context menu**

`uicontextmenu` object

Context menu, specified as a `uicontextmenu` object. Use this property to display a context menu when you right-click the object. Create the context menu using the `uicontextmenu` function.

---

**Note** If the `PickableParts` property is set to 'none' or if the `HitTest` property is set to 'off', then the context menu does not appear.

---

### **Selected — Selection state**

'off' (default) | 'on'

Selection state, specified as one of these values:

- 'on' — Selected. If you click the object when in plot edit mode, then MATLAB sets its `Selected` property to 'on'. If the `SelectionHighlight` property also is set to 'on', then MATLAB displays selection handles around the object.
- 'off' — Not selected.



**SelectionHighlight — Display of selection handles when selected**

'on' (default) | 'off'

Display of selection handles when selected, specified as one of these values:

- 'on' — Display selection handles when the `Selected` property is set to 'on'.
- 'off' — Never display selection handles, even when the `Selected` property is set to 'on'.

**DataTipTemplate — Data tip content**

DataTipTemplate object

Data tip content, specified as a `DataTipTemplate` object. You can control the content that appears in a data tip by modifying the properties of the underlying `DataTipTemplate` object. For a list of properties, see `DataTipTemplate`.

For an example of modifying data tips, see “Create Custom Data Tips” (MATLAB).

---

**Note** The `DataTipTemplate` object is not returned by `findobj` or `findall`, and it is not copied by `copyobj`.

---

**Callback Execution Control****PickableParts — Ability to capture mouse clicks**

'visible' (default) | 'none'

Ability to capture mouse clicks, specified as one of these values:

- 'visible' — Can capture mouse clicks when visible. The `Visible` property must be set to 'on' and you must click a part of the `TextScatter` object that has a defined color. You cannot click a part that has an associated color property set to 'none'. If the plot contains markers, then the entire marker is clickable if either the edge or the fill has a defined color. The `HitTest` property determines if the `TextScatter` object responds to the click or if an ancestor does.
- 'none' — Cannot capture mouse clicks. Clicking the `TextScatter` object passes the click to the object below it in the current view of the figure window. The `HitTest` property of the `TextScatter` object has no effect.

**HitTest — Response to captured mouse clicks**

'on' (default) | 'off'

Response to captured mouse clicks, specified as one of these values:

- 'on' — Trigger the `ButtonDownFcn` callback of the `TextScatter` object. If you have defined the `UIContextMenu` property, then invoke the context menu.
- 'off' — Trigger the callbacks for the nearest ancestor of the `TextScatter` object that has a `HitTest` property set to 'on' and a `PickableParts` property value that enables the ancestor to capture mouse clicks.

---

**Note** The `PickableParts` property determines if the `TextScatter` object can capture mouse clicks. If it cannot, then the `HitTest` property has no effect.

---

### **Interruptible — Callback interruption**

'on' (default) | 'off'

Callback interruption, specified as 'on' or 'off'. The `Interruptible` property determines if a running callback can be interrupted.

---

**Note** There are two callback states to consider:

- The running callback is the currently executing callback.
- The interrupting callback is a callback that tries to interrupt the running callback.

Whenever MATLAB invokes a callback, that callback attempts to interrupt a running callback. The `Interruptible` property of the object owning the running callback determines if interruption is allowed. If interruption is not allowed, then the `BusyAction` property of the object owning the interrupting callback determines if it is discarded or put in the queue.

---

If the `ButtonDownFcn` callback of the `TextScatter` object is the running callback, then the `Interruptible` property determines if it another callback can interrupt it:

- 'on' — Interruptible. Interruption occurs at the next point where MATLAB processes the queue, such as when there is a `drawnow`, `figure`, `getframe`, `waitfor`, or `pause` command.
  - If the running callback contains one of these commands, then MATLAB stops the execution of the callback at this point and executes the interrupting callback.

MATLAB resumes executing the running callback when the interrupting callback completes. For more information, see “Interrupt Callback Execution” (MATLAB).

- If the running callback does not contain one of these commands, then MATLAB finishes executing the callback without interruption.
- 'off' — Not interruptible. MATLAB finishes executing the running callback without any interruptions.

### **BusyAction — Callback queuing**

'queue' (default) | 'cancel'

Callback queuing specified as 'queue' or 'cancel'. The `BusyAction` property determines how MATLAB handles the execution of interrupting callbacks.

---

**Note** There are two callback states to consider:

- The running callback is the currently executing callback.
- The interrupting callback is a callback that tries to interrupt the running callback.

Whenever MATLAB invokes a callback, that callback attempts to interrupt a running callback. The `Interruptible` property of the object owning the running callback determines if interruption is allowed. If interruption is not allowed, then the `BusyAction` property of the object owning the interrupting callback determines if it is discarded or put in the queue.

---

If the `ButtonDownFcn` callback of the `TextScatter` object tries to interrupt a running callback that cannot be interrupted, then the `BusyAction` property determines if it is discarded or put in the queue. Specify the `BusyAction` property as one of these values:

- 'queue' — Put the interrupting callback in a queue to be processed after the running callback finishes execution. This is the default behavior.
- 'cancel' — Discard the interrupting callback.

### **Creation and Deletion Control**

#### **CreateFcn — Creation callback**

' ' (default) | function handle | cell array | character vector

Creation callback, specified as one of these values:

- Function handle
- Cell array containing a function handle and additional arguments
- Character vector that is a valid MATLAB command or function, which is evaluated in the base workspace (not recommended)

Use this property to execute code when you create the object. Setting the `CreateFcn` property on an existing object has no effect. You must define a default value for this property, or define this property using a `Name, Value` pair during object creation. MATLAB executes the callback after creating the object and setting all of its properties.

If you specify this callback using a function handle, then MATLAB passes two arguments to the callback function when executing the callback:

- Created object — You can access properties of the object from within the callback function. You also can access the object through the `CallbackObject` property of the root, which can be queried using the `gcbo` function.
- Event data — This argument is empty for this property. Replace it with the tilde character (~) in the function definition to indicate that this argument is not used.

For more information on how to use function handles to define callback functions, see “Callback Definition” (MATLAB).

Example: `@myCallback`

Example: `{@myCallback, arg3}`

### **DeleteFcn — Deletion callback**

' ' (default) | function handle | cell array | character vector

Deletion callback, specified as one of these values:

- Function handle
- Cell array containing a function handle and additional arguments
- Character vector that is a valid MATLAB command or function, which is evaluated in the base workspace (not recommended)

Use this property to execute code when you delete the object MATLAB executes the callback before destroying the object so that the callback can access its property values.

If you specify this callback using a function handle, then MATLAB passes two arguments to the callback function when executing the callback:

- Deleted object — You can access properties of the object from within the callback function. You also can access the object through the `CallbackObject` property of the root, which can be queried using the `gcbo` function.
- Event data — This argument is empty for this property. Replace it with the tilde character (~) in the function definition to indicate that this argument is not used.

For more information on how to use function handles to define callback functions, see “Callback Definition” (MATLAB).

Example: `@myCallback`

Example: `{@myCallback, arg3}`

### **BeingDeleted — Deletion status**

'off' (default) | 'on'

Deletion status, returned as 'off' or 'on'. MATLAB sets the `BeingDeleted` property to 'on' when the delete function of the object begins execution (see the `DeleteFcn` property). The `BeingDeleted` property remains set to 'on' until the object no longer exists.

Check the value of the `BeingDeleted` property to verify that the object is not about to be deleted before querying or modifying it.

## **See Also**

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `textscatter` | `textscatter3` | `tokenizedDocument` | `wordCloudCounts` | `wordcloud`

## **Topics**

“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

## **Introduced in R2017b**

## tfidf

Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix

### Syntax

```
M = tfidf(bag)
M = tfidf(bag, documents)
M = tfidf( ____, Name, Value)
```

### Description

`M = tfidf(bag)` returns a Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix based on the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`M = tfidf(bag, documents)` returns a tf-idf matrix for the documents in `documents` by using the inverse document frequency (IDF) factor computed from `bag`.

`M = tfidf( ____, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Create Tf-idf Matrix

Create a Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix from a bag-of-words model.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
```

```
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Create a tf-idf matrix. View the first 10 rows and columns.

```
M = tfidf(bag);
full(M(1:10,1:10))
```

```
ans = 10x10
```

3.6507	4.3438	2.7344	3.6507	4.3438	2.2644	3.2452	3.8918	2.4
0	0	0	0	0	4.5287	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	2.7344	0	0	0	0	0	0

### Create tf-idf Matrix from New Documents

Create a Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency (tf-idf) matrix from a bag-of-words model and an array of new documents.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words

separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model from the documents.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
  
      Counts: [154x3092 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    NumWords: 3092  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Create a tf-idf matrix for an array of new documents using the inverse document frequency (IDF) factor computed from `bag`.

```
newDocuments = tokenizedDocument([  
    "what's in a name? a rose by any other name would smell as sweet."  
    "if music be the food of love, play on."]);  
M = tfidf(bag,newDocuments)
```

```
M =  
  (1,7)      3.2452  
  (1,36)     1.2303  
  (2,197)    3.4275  
  (2,313)    3.6507  
  (2,387)    0.6061  
  (1,1205)   4.7958  
  (1,1835)   3.6507  
  (2,1917)   5.0370
```



## Specify TF Weight Formulas

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
    Counts: [154x3092 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
    NumDocuments: 154
```

Create a tf-idf matrix. View the first 10 rows and columns.

```
M = tfidf(bag);
full(M(1:10,1:10))
```

```
ans = 10x10
```

```

 3.6507    4.3438    2.7344    3.6507    4.3438    2.2644    3.2452    3.8918    2.4
    0         0         0         0         0         4.5287    0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         0         0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         2.2644    0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         2.2644    0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         2.2644    0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         0         0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         0         0         0
    0         0         0         0         0         2.2644    0         0
    0         0         2.7344    0         0         0         0         0
```

You can change the contributions made by the TF and IDF factors to the tf-idf matrix by specifying the TF and IDF weight formulas.

To ignore how many times a word appears in a document, use the binary option of 'TFWeight'. Create a tf-idf matrix and set 'TFWeight' to 'binary'. View the first 10 rows and columns.

```
M = tfidf(bag, 'TFWeight', 'binary');  
full(M(1:10,1:10))
```

```
ans = 10×10
```

3.6507	4.3438	2.7344	3.6507	4.3438	2.2644	3.2452	1.9459	2.4
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	2.2644	0	0	0
0	0	2.7344	0	0	0	0	0	0

## Input Arguments

### **bag** — Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a bagOfWords object or a bagOfNgrams object.

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If documents is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row vector representing a single document, where each element is a word.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'Normalized', true` specifies to normalize the frequency counts.

### TFWeight — Method to set term frequency factor

`'raw'` (default) | `'binary'` | `'log'`

Method to set term frequency (TF) factor, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'TFWeight'` and one of the following:

- `'raw'` - Set the TF factor to the unchanged term counts.
- `'binary'` - Set the TF factor to the matrix of ones and zeros where the ones indicate whether a term is in a document.
- `'log'` - Set the TF factor to  $1 + \log(\text{bag.Counts})$ .

Example: `'TFWeight', 'binary'`

Data Types: char

### IDFWeight — Method to set inverse document frequency factor

`'normal'` (default) | `'unary'` | `'smooth'` | `'max'` | `'probabilistic'`

Method to set inverse document frequency (IDF) factor, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'IDFWeight'` and one of the following:

- `'normal'` - Set the IDF factor to  $\log(N/NT)$ .
- `'unary'` - Set the IDF factor to 1.
- `'smooth'` - Set the IDF factor to  $\log(1+N/NT)$ .
- `'max'` - Set the IDF factor to  $\log(1+\max(NT)/NT)$ .
- `'probabilistic'` - Set the IDF factor to  $\log((N-NT)/NT)$ .

where `N` is the number of documents in the bag, and `NT` is the number of documents containing each term which is equivalent to `sum(bag.Counts)`.

Example: `'IDFWeight', 'smooth'`

Data Types: char

## **Normalized — Option to normalize term counts**

false (default) | true

Option to normalize term counts, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Normalized' and true or false. If true, then the function normalizes each vector of term counts in the Euclidean norm.

Example: 'Normalized', true

Data Types: logical

## **DocumentsIn — Orientation of output documents**

'rows' (default) | 'columns'

Orientation of output documents in the frequency count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'DocumentsIn' and one of the following:

- 'rows' - Return a matrix of frequency counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- 'columns' - Return a transposed matrix of frequency counts with columns corresponding to documents.

Data Types: char

## **ForceCellOutput — Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array**

false (default) | true

Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array, specified as the comma separated pair consisting of 'ForceCellOutput' and true or false.

Data Types: logical

# Output Arguments

## **M — Output Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency matrix**

sparse matrix | cell array of sparse matrices

Output Term Frequency-Inverse Document Frequency matrix, specified as a sparse matrix or a cell array of sparse matrices.

If bag is a non-scalar array or 'ForceCellOutput' is true, then the function returns the outputs as a cell array of sparse matrices. Each element in the cell array is the tf-idf matrix calculated from the corresponding element of bag.

## See Also

bagOfNgrams | bagOfWords | encode | tokenizedDocument | topkngrams | topkeywords

## Topics

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*  
*“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”*  
*“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”*  
*“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”*  
*“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”*

**Introduced in R2017b**

# tokenizedDocument

Array of tokenized documents for text analysis

## Description

A tokenized document is a document represented as a collection of words (also known as tokens) which is used for text analysis.

Use tokenized documents to:

- Detect complex tokens in text, such as web addresses, emoticons, emoji, and hashtags.
- Remove words such as stop words using the `removeWords` or `removeStopWords` functions.
- Perform word-level preprocessing tasks such as stemming or lemmatization using the `normalizeWords` function.
- Analyze word and n-gram frequencies using `bagOfWords` and `bagOfNgrams` objects.
- Add sentence and part-of-speech details using the `addSentenceDetails` and `addPartOfSpeechDetails` functions.
- Add entity tags using the `addEntityDetails` function.
- View details about the tokens using the `tokenDetails` function.

The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text. To learn how to use `tokenizedDocument` for other languages, see “Language Considerations” on page 1-425.

## Creation

## Syntax

```
documents = tokenizedDocument  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`documents = tokenizedDocument` creates a scalar tokenized document with no tokens.

`documents = tokenizedDocument(str)` tokenizes the elements of a string array and returns a tokenized document array.

`documents = tokenizedDocument(str,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Input Arguments

### **str** – Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors | cell array of string arrays

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, cell array of character vectors, or cell array of string arrays.

If the input text has not already been split into words, then `str` must be a string array, character vector, cell array of character vectors, or a cell array of string scalars.

Example: `["an example of a short document";"a second short document"]`

Example: `'an example of a single document'`

Example: `{'an example of a short document';'a second short document'}`

If the input text has already been split into words, then specify `'TokenizeMethod'` to be `'none'`. If `str` contains a single document, then it must be a string vector of words, a row cell array of character vectors, or a cell array containing a single string vector of words. If `str` contains multiple documents, then it must be a cell array of string arrays.

Example: `["an" "example" "document"]`

Example: `{'an','example','document'}`

Example: `{["an" "example" "of" "a" "short" "document"]}`

Example: `{["an" "example" "of" "a" "short" "document"];["a" "second" "short" "document"]}`

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'DetectPatterns', {'email-address', 'web-address'}` detects email addresses and web addresses

## TokenizeMethod — Method to tokenize documents

`'unicode' | 'mecab' | mecabOptions object | 'none'`

Method to tokenize documents, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'TokenizeMethod'` and one of the following:

- `'unicode'` - Tokenize input text using rules based on Unicode® Standard Annex #29 [1] and the ICU tokenizer [2]. If `str` is a cell array, then the elements of `str` must be string scalars or character vectors. If `'Language'` is `'en'` or `'de'`, then `'unicode'` is the default.
- `'mecab'` - Tokenize Japanese and Korean text using the MeCab tokenizer [3]. If `'Language'` is `'ja'` or `'ko'`, then `'mecab'` is the default.
- `mecabOptions` object - Tokenize Japanese and Korean text using the MeCab options specified by a `mecabOptions` object.
- `'none'` - Do not tokenize the input text.

If the input text has already been split into words, then specify `'TokenizeMethod'` to be `'none'`. If `str` contains a single document, then it must be a string vector of words, a row cell array of character vectors, or a cell array containing a single string vector of words. If `str` contains multiple documents, then it must be a cell array of string arrays.

## DetectPatterns — Patterns of complex tokens to detect

`'all'` (default) | character vector | string array | cell array of character vectors

Patterns of complex tokens to detect, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DetectPatterns'` and `'none'`, `'all'`, or a string or cell array containing one or more of the following.

- `'email-address'` - Detect email addresses. For example, treat `"user@domain.com"` as a single token.



- 'web-address' - Detect web addresses. For example, treat "https://www.mathworks.com" as a single token.
- 'hashtag' - Detect hashtags. For example, treat "#MATLAB" as a single token.
- 'at-mention' - Detect at-mentions. For example, treat "@MathWorks" as a single token.
- 'emoticon' - Detect emoticons. For example, treat ":-D" as a single token.

If `DetectPatterns` is 'none', then the function does not detect any complex token patterns. If `DetectPatterns` is 'all', then the function detects all the listed complex token patterns.

Example: 'DetectPatterns', 'hashtag'

Example: 'DetectPatterns', {'email-address', 'web-address'}

Data Types: char | string | cell

### **CustomTokens — Custom tokens to detect**

' ' (default) | string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors | table

Custom tokens to detect, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'CustomTokens' and one of the following.

- A string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors containing the custom tokens.
- A table containing the custom tokens in a column named `Token` and the corresponding token types a column named `Type`.

If you specify the custom tokens as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors, then the function assigns token type "custom". To specify a custom token type, use table input. To view the token types, use the `tokenDetails` function.

Example: 'CustomTokens', ["C++" "C#"]

Data Types: char | string | table | cell

### **RegularExpressions — Regular expressions to detect**

' ' (default) | string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors | table

Regular expressions to detect, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'RegularExpressions' and one of the following.

- A string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors containing regular expressions.
- A table containing regular expressions a column named `Pattern` and the corresponding token types in a column named `Type`.

If you specify the regular expressions as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors, then the function assigns token type "custom". To specify a custom token type, use table input. To view the token types, use the `tokenDetails` function.

Example: `'RegularExpressions', ["ver:\d+" "rev:\d+"]`

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `table` | `cell`

## **TopLevelDomains — Top-level domains to use for web address detection**

`character vector` | `string array` | `cell array of character vectors`

Top-level domains to use for web address detection, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'TopLevelDomains'` and a character vector, string array, or cell array of character vectors. By default, the function uses the output of `topLevelDomains`.

This option only applies if `'DetectPatterns'` is `'all'` or contains `'web-address'`.

Example: `'TopLevelDomains', ["com" "net" "org"]`

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `cell`

## **Language — Language**

`'en'` | `'ja'` | `'de'` | `'ko'`

Language, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'Language'` and one of the following.

- `'en'` - English. This option also sets the default value for `'TokenizeMethod'` to `'unicode'`.
- `'ja'` - Japanese. This option also sets the default value for `'TokenizeMethod'` to `'mecab'`.
- `'de'` - German. This option also sets the default value for `'TokenizeMethod'` to `'unicode'`.
- `'ko'` - Korean. This option also sets the default value for `'TokenizeMethod'` to `'mecab'`.

If you do not specify a value, then the function detects the language from the input text using the `corpusLanguage` function.

This option specifies the language details of the tokens. To view the language details of the tokens, use `tokenDetails`. These language details determine the behavior of the `removeStopWords`, `addPartOfSpeechDetails`, `normalizeWords`, `addSentenceDetails`, and `addEntityDetails` functions on the tokens.

For more information about language support in Text Analytics Toolbox, see “Language Considerations”.

Example: `'Language', 'ja'`

## Properties

### Vocabulary — Unique words in the documents

string array

Unique words in the documents, specified as a string array. The words do not appear in any particular order.

Data Types: `string`

## Object Functions

### Preprocessing

<code>erasePunctuation</code>	Erase punctuation from text and documents
<code>removeStopWords</code>	Remove stop words from documents
<code>removeWords</code>	Remove selected words from documents or bag-of-words model
<code>normalizeWords</code>	Stem or lemmatize words
<code>replaceWords</code>	Replace words in documents
<code>replaceNgrams</code>	Replace n-grams in documents
<code>removeEmptyDocuments</code>	Remove empty documents from tokenized document array, bag-of-words model, or bag-of-n-grams model
<code>lower</code>	Convert documents to lowercase
<code>upper</code>	Convert documents to uppercase

### Tokens Details

`tokenDetails` Details of tokens in tokenized document array

<code>addSentenceDetails</code>	Add sentence numbers to documents
<code>addPartOfSpeechDetails</code>	Add part-of-speech tags to documents
<code>addLanguageDetails</code>	Add language identifiers to documents
<code>addTypeDetails</code>	Add token type details to documents
<code>addLemmaDetails</code>	Add lemma forms of tokens to documents
<code>addEntityDetails</code>	Add entity tags to documents

## Export

`writeTextDocument` Write documents to text file

## Manipulation and Conversion

<code>doclength</code>	Length of documents in document array
<code>context</code>	Search documents for word or n-gram occurrences in context
<code>joinWords</code>	Convert documents to string by joining words
<code>doc2cell</code>	Convert documents to cell array of string vectors
<code>string</code>	Convert scalar document to string vector
<code>plus</code>	Append documents
<code>replace</code>	Replace substrings in documents
<code>docfun</code>	Apply function to words in documents
<code>regexprep</code>	Replace text in words of documents using regular expression

## Display

`wordcloud` Create word cloud chart from text, bag-of-words model, bag-of-n-grams model, or LDA model

## Examples

### Tokenize Text

Create tokenized documents from a string array.

```
str = [  
    "an example of a short sentence"  
    "a second short sentence"]  
  
str = 2x1 string array  
    "an example of a short sentence"
```

```
"a second short sentence"
```

```
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)

documents =
    2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

### Detect Complex Tokens

Create a tokenized document from the string `str`. By default, the function treats the hashtag `"#MATLAB"`, the emoticon `":-D"`, and the web address `"https://www.mathworks.com/help"` as single tokens.

```
str = "Learn how to analyze text in #MATLAB! :-D see https://www.mathworks.com/help/";
document = tokenizedDocument(str)

document =
    tokenizedDocument:

    11 tokens: Learn how to analyze text in #MATLAB ! :-D see https://www.mathworks.com,
```

To detect only hashtags as complex tokens, specify the `'DetectPatterns'` option to be `'hashtag'` only. The function then tokenizes the emoticon `":-D"` and the web address `"https://www.mathworks.com/help"` into multiple tokens.

```
document = tokenizedDocument(str, 'DetectPatterns', 'hashtag')

document =
    tokenizedDocument:

    24 tokens: Learn how to analyze text in #MATLAB ! : - D see https : / / www . mathw
```

## Remove Stop Words from Documents

Remove the stop words from an array of documents using `removeStopWords`. The `tokenizedDocument` function detects that the documents are in English, so `removeStopWords` removes English stop words.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
  "an example of a short sentence"
  "a second short sentence"]);
newDocuments = removeStopWords(documents)

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    3 tokens: example short sentence
    3 tokens: second short sentence
```

## Stem Words in Documents

Stem the words in a document array using the Porter stemmer.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
  "a strongly worded collection of words"
  "another collection of words"]);
newDocuments = normalizeWords(documents)

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: a strongli word collect of word
    4 tokens: anoth collect of word
```

## Specify Custom Tokens

The `tokenizedDocument` function, by default, splits words and tokens that contain symbols. For example, the function splits "C++" and "C#" into multiple tokens.

```
str = "I am experienced in MATLAB, C++, and C#.";
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)
```

```
documents =
    tokenizedDocument:
```

```
    14 tokens: I am experienced in MATLAB , C + + , and C # .
```

To prevent the function from splitting tokens that contain symbols, specify custom tokens using the 'CustomTokens' option.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument(str,'CustomTokens',["C++" "C#"])
```

```
documents =
    tokenizedDocument:
```

```
    11 tokens: I am experienced in MATLAB , C++ , and C# .
```

The custom tokens have token type "custom". View the token details. The column Type contains the token types.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

```
tdetails=11x5 table
```

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"I"	1	1	letters	en
"am"	1	1	letters	en
"experienced"	1	1	letters	en
"in"	1	1	letters	en
"MATLAB"	1	1	letters	en
","	1	1	punctuation	en
"C++"	1	1	custom	en
","	1	1	punctuation	en
"and"	1	1	letters	en
"C#"	1	1	custom	en
"."	1	1	punctuation	en

To specify your own token types, input the custom tokens as a table with the tokens in a column named Token, and the types in a column named Type. To assign a custom type to a token that doesn't include symbols, include in the table too. For example, create a table

that will assign "MATLAB", "C++", and "C#" to the "programming-language" token type.

```
T = table;
T.Token = ["MATLAB" "C++" "C#"]';
T.Type = ["programming-language" "programming-language" "programming-language"]'
```

T=3×2 table

Token	Type
"MATLAB"	"programming-language"
"C++"	"programming-language"
"C#"	"programming-language"

Tokenize the text using the table of custom tokens and view the token details.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument(str, 'CustomTokens', T);
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

tdetails=11×5 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"I"	1	1	letters	en
"am"	1	1	letters	en
"experienced"	1	1	letters	en
"in"	1	1	letters	en
"MATLAB"	1	1	programming-language	en
","	1	1	punctuation	en
"C++"	1	1	programming-language	en
","	1	1	punctuation	en
"and"	1	1	letters	en
"C#"	1	1	programming-language	en
". "	1	1	punctuation	en

### Specify Custom Tokens Using Regular Expressions

The `tokenizedDocument` function, by default, splits words and tokens containing symbols. For example, the function splits the text "ver:2" into multiple tokens.



```
str = "Upgraded to ver:2 rev:3.";
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)

documents =
    tokenizedDocument:

        9 tokens: Upgraded to ver : 2 rev : 3 .
```

To prevent the function from splitting tokens that have particular patterns, specify those patterns using the 'RegularExpressions' option.

Specify regular expressions to detect tokens denoting version and revision numbers: strings of digits appearing after "ver:" and "rev:" respectively.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument(str, 'RegularExpressions', ["ver:\d+" "rev:\d+"])

documents =
    tokenizedDocument:

        5 tokens: Upgraded to ver:2 rev:3 .
```

Custom tokens, by default, have token type "custom". View the token details. The column Type contains the token types.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

```
tdetails=5x5 table
```

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"Upgraded"	1	1	letters	en
"to"	1	1	letters	en
"ver:2"	1	1	custom	en
"rev:3"	1	1	custom	en
". "	1	1	punctuation	en

To specify your own token types, input the regular expressions as a table with the regular expressions in a column named Pattern and the token types in a column named Type.

```
T = table;
T.Pattern = ["ver:\d+" "rev:\d+"];
T.Type = ["version" "revision"]'
```

T=2x2 table

Pattern	Type
"ver:\d+"	"version"
"rev:\d+"	"revision"

Tokenize the text using the table of custom tokens and view the token details.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument(str, 'RegularExpressions', T);
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

tdetails=5x5 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"Upgraded"	1	1	letters	en
"to"	1	1	letters	en
"ver:2"	1	1	version	en
"rev:3"	1	1	revision	en
". "	1	1	punctuation	en

### Search Documents for Word Occurrences

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str, newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Search for the word "life".

```
tbl = context(documents, "life");
head(tbl)
```

ans=8x3 table

Context	Document	Word
---------	----------	------

"consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless shalt "	9	10
"ainted counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil"	16	35
"d counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil pupi"	16	36
" heaven knows tomb hides life shows half parts write b"	17	14
"he eyes long lives gives life thee "	18	69
"tender embassy love thee life made four two alone sink"	45	23
"ves beauty though lovers life beauty shall black lines"	63	50
"s shorn away live second life second head ere beautys "	68	27

View the occurrences in a string array.

tbl.Context

ans = 23x1 string array

```
"consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless shalt "
"ainted counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil"
"d counterfeit lines life life repair times pencil pupi"
" heaven knows tomb hides life shows half parts write b"
"he eyes long lives gives life thee "
"tender embassy love thee life made four two alone sink"
"ves beauty though lovers life beauty shall black lines"
"s shorn away live second life second head ere beautys "
"e rehearse let love even life decay lest wise world lo"
"st bail shall carry away life hath line interest memor"
"art thou hast lost dregs life prey worms body dead cow"
"      thoughts food life sweetseasond showers gro"
"tten name hence immortal life shall though once gone w"
" beauty mute others give life bring tomb lives life fa"
"ve life bring tomb lives life fair eyes poets praise d"
" steal thyself away term life thou art assured mine li"
"fe thou art assured mine life longer thy love stay dep"
" fear worst wrongs least life hath end better state be"
"anst vex inconstant mind life thy revolt doth lie o ha"
" fame faster time wastes life thou preventst scythe cr"
"ess harmful deeds better life provide public means pub"
"ate hate away threw savd life saying "
" many nymphs vovd chaste life keep came tripping maide"
```

## Tokenize Japanese Text

Tokenize Japanese text using `tokenizedDocument`. The function automatically detects Japanese text.

```
str = [  
  "恋に悩み、苦しむ。"  
  "恋の悩みで苦しむ。"  
  "空に星が輝き、瞬いている。"  
  "空の星が輝きを増している。"];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)  
  
documents =  
  4x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    6 tokens: 恋 に 悩み 、 苦しむ 。  
    6 tokens: 恋 の 悩み で 苦しむ 。  
   10 tokens: 空 に 星 が 輝き 、 瞬い て い る 。  
   10 tokens: 空 の 星 が 輝き を 増し て い る 。
```

## Tokenize German Text

Tokenize German text using `tokenizedDocument`. The function automatically detects German text.

```
str = [  
  "Guten Morgen. Wie geht es dir?"  
  "Heute wird ein guter Tag."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str)  
  
documents =  
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:  
  
    8 tokens: Guten Morgen . Wie geht es dir ?  
    6 tokens: Heute wird ein guter Tag .
```

## More About

### Language Considerations

The `tokenizedDocument` function has built-in rules for English, Japanese, German, and Korean only. For English and German text, the `'unicode'` tokenization method of `tokenizedDocument` detects tokens using rules based on Unicode Standard Annex #29 [1] and the ICU tokenizer [2], modified to better detect complex tokens such as hashtags and URLs. For Japanese and Korean text, the `'mecab'` tokenization method detects tokens using rules based on the MeCab tokenizer [3].

For other languages, you can still try using `tokenizedDocument`. If `tokenizedDocument` does not produce useful results, then try tokenizing the text manually. To create a `tokenizedDocument` array from manually tokenized text, set the `'TokenizeMethod'` option to `'none'`.

For more information, see “Language Considerations”.

## Compatibility Considerations

### **tokenizedDocument detects Korean language**

*Behavior changed in R2019b*

Starting in R2019b, `tokenizedDocument` detects the Korean language and sets the `'Language'` option to `'ko'`. This changes the default behavior of the `addSentenceDetails`, `addPartOfSpeechDetails`, `removeStopWords`, and `normalizeWords` functions for Korean document input. This change allows the software to use Korean-specific rules and word lists for analysis. If `tokenizedDocument` incorrectly detects text as Korean, then you can specify the language manually by setting the `'Language'` name-value pair of `tokenizedDocument`.

In previous versions, `tokenizedDocument` usually detects Korean text as English and sets the `'Language'` option to `'en'`. To reproduce this behavior, manually set the `'Language'` name-value pair of `tokenizedDocument` to `'en'`.

### **tokenizedDocument detects emoticons**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, `tokenizedDocument`, by default, detects emoticon tokens. This behavior makes it easier to analyze text containing emoticons.

In R2017b and R2018a, `tokenizedDocument` splits emoticon tokens into multiple tokens. To reproduce this behavior, in `tokenizedDocument`, specify the `'DetectPatterns'` option to be `{'email-address', 'web-address', 'hashtag', 'at-mention'}`.

### **tokenDetails returns token type emoji for emoji characters**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, `tokenizedDocument` detects emoji characters and the `tokenDetails` function reports these tokens with type `"emoji"`. This makes it easier to analyze text containing emoji characters.

In R2018a, `tokenDetails` reports emoji characters with type `"other"`. To find the indices of the tokens with type `"emoji"` or `"other"`, use the indices `idx = tdetails.Type == "emoji" | tdetails.Type == "other"`, where `tdetails` is a table of token details.

### **tokenizedDocument does not split at slash and colon characters between digits**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, `tokenizedDocument` does not split at slash, backslash, or colon characters when they appear between two digits. This behavior produces better results when tokenizing text containing dates and times.

In previous versions, `tokenizedDocument` splits at these characters. To reproduce the behavior, tokenize the text manually or insert whitespace characters around slash, backslash, and colon characters before using `tokenizedDocument`.

## **References**

- [1] *Unicode Text Segmentation*. <https://www.unicode.org/reports/tr29/>
- [2] *Boundary Analysis*. <http://userguide.icu-project.org/boundaryanalysis>
- [3] *MeCab: Yet Another Part-of-Speech and Morphological Analyzer*. <https://taku910.github.io/mecab/>

## See Also

[addEntityDetails](#) | [addPartOfSpeechDetails](#) | [addSentenceDetails](#) | [bagOfNgrams](#) | [bagOfWords](#) | [context](#) | [joinWords](#) | [normalizeWords](#) | [removeEmptyDocuments](#) | [removeStopWords](#) | [removeWords](#) | [replaceNgrams](#) | [replaceWords](#) | [tokenDetails](#)

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)  
[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)  
[“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”](#)  
[“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”](#)  
[“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”](#)  
[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)  
[“Language Considerations”](#)  
[“Japanese Language Support”](#)  
[“German Language Support”](#)

## Introduced in R2017b

## textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma

Extract lemmata from MeCab output for Japanese

### Syntax

```
lemmata = textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma(words, info)
```

### Description

`lemmata = textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma(words, info)` extracts lemmata (normalized words) given MeCab output in the format returned by the MeCab-ipadic dictionary.

### Input Arguments

#### **words** — Input tokens

string vector

Input tokens, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: `string`

#### **info** — Information struct

struct

Information struct with the following fields:

- **Feature** - String vector of tokens of the same size as `words` containing the MeCab output lines in ChaSen format without the split tokens themselves.
- **PartOfSpeech** - Numerical code used inside the MeCab-ipadic dictionary for the part-of-speech classification.

Data Types: `struct`



## Output Arguments

### **lemmata — Extracted lemmata**

string vector

Extracted lemmata, returned as a string vector the same size as words.

## See Also

`addLemmaDetails` | `mecabOptions` | `normalizeWords` |  
`textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER` | `textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS` |  
`tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

*“Japanese Language Support”*  
*“Analyze Japanese Text Data”*  
*“Language Considerations”*  
*“Language-Independent Features”*

**Introduced in R2019b**

## **textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER**

Extract named entity information from MeCab output for Japanese

### **Syntax**

```
entities = textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER(words,info)
```

### **Description**

`entities = textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER(words,info)` extracts named entity information given MeCab output in the format returned by the MeCab-ipadic dictionary.

### **Input Arguments**

#### **words — Input tokens**

string vector

Input tokens, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: `string`

#### **info — Information struct**

struct

Information struct with the following fields:

- **Feature** - String vector of tokens of the same size as `words` containing the MeCab output lines in ChaSen format without the split tokens themselves.
- **PartOfSpeech** - Numerical code used inside the MeCab-ipadic dictionary for the part-of-speech classification.

Data Types: `struct`

## Output Arguments

### **entities** — Extracted entity information

categorical vector

Extracted entity information, returned as a categorical vector the same size as words.

## See Also

`addEntityDetails` | `mecabOptions` | `textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma` |  
`textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

*“Japanese Language Support”*

*“Analyze Japanese Text Data”*

*“Language Considerations”*

*“Language-Independent Features”*

**Introduced in R2019b**

## textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS

Extract part-of-speech information from MeCab output for Japanese

### Syntax

```
posTags = textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS(words,info)
```

### Description

`posTags = textanalytics.ja.mecabToPOS(words,info)` extracts part-of-speech information given MeCab output in the format returned by the MeCab-ipadic dictionary.

### Input Arguments

#### **words** — Input tokens

string vector

Input tokens, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: string

#### **info** — Information struct

struct

Information struct with the following fields:

- **Feature** - String vector of tokens of the same size as `words` containing the MeCab output lines in ChaSen format without the split tokens themselves.
- **PartOfSpeech** - Numerical code used inside the MeCab-ipadic dictionary for the part-of-speech classification.

Data Types: struct

## Output Arguments

### **posTags** — Extracted part-of-speech information

category vector

Extracted part-of-speech information, returned as a categorical vector the same size as words.

## See Also

[addPartOfSpeechDetails](#) | [mecabOptions](#) | [textanalytics.ja.mecabToLemma](#) | [textanalytics.ja.mecabToNER](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

[“Japanese Language Support”](#)

[“Analyze Japanese Text Data”](#)

[“Language Considerations”](#)

[“Language-Independent Features”](#)

**Introduced in R2019b**

## tokenDetails

Details of tokens in tokenized document array

### Syntax

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)
```

### Description

`tdetails = tokenDetails(documents)` returns a table of token details for the tokens in the `tokenizedDocument` array `documents`.

### Examples

#### View Token Details of Documents

Create a tokenized document array.

```
str = [ ...  
    "This is an example document. It has two sentences."  
    "This document has one sentence and an emoticon. :)"  
    "Here is another example document. :D"];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

View the token details of the first few tokens.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);  
head(tdetails)
```

*ans=8×5 table*

<u>Token</u>	<u>DocumentNumber</u>	<u>LineNumber</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Language</u>
"This"	1	1	letters	en
"is"	1	1	letters	en

"an"	1	1	letters	en
"example"	1	1	letters	en
"document"	1	1	letters	en
"."	1	1	punctuation	en
"It"	1	1	letters	en
"has"	1	1	letters	en

The `type` variable contains the type of each token. View the emoticons in the documents.

```
idx = tdetails.Type == "emoticon";
tdetails(idx,:)
```

ans=2x5 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
":)"	2	1	emoticon	en
":D"	3	1	emoticon	en

## Add Sentence Details to Documents

Create a tokenized document array.

```
str = [ ...
    "This is an example document. It has two sentences."
    "This document has one sentence."
    "Here is another example document. It also has two sentences."];
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Add sentence details to the documents using `addSentenceDetails`. This function adds the sentence numbers to the table returned by `tokenDetails`. View the updated token details of the first few tokens.

```
documents = addSentenceDetails(documents);
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tdetails)
```

ans=8x6 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"This"	1	1	1	letters	e

"is"	1	1	1	letters
"an"	1	1	1	letters
"example"	1	1	1	letters
"document"	1	1	1	letters
","	1	1	1	punctuation
"It"	1	2	1	letters
"has"	1	2	1	letters

View the token details of the second sentence of the third document.

```
idx = tdetails.DocumentNumber == 3 & ...  
      tdetails.SentenceNumber == 2;  
tdetails(idx,:)
```

ans=6x6 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"It"	3	2	1	letters	
"also"	3	2	1	letters	
"has"	3	2	1	letters	
"two"	3	2	1	letters	
"sentences"	3	2	1	letters	
","	3	2	1	punctuation	

## Add Part-of-Speech Details to Documents

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

View the token details of the first few tokens.

```
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);  
head(tdetails)
```



ans=8×5 table

Token	DocumentNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"fairest"	1	1	letters	en
"creatures"	1	1	letters	en
"desire"	1	1	letters	en
"increase"	1	1	letters	en
"thereby"	1	1	letters	en
"beautys"	1	1	letters	en
"rose"	1	1	letters	en
"might"	1	1	letters	en

Add part-of-speech details to the documents using the `addPartOfSpeechDetails` function. This function first adds sentence information to the documents, and then adds the part-of-speech tags to the table returned by `tokenDetails`. View the updated token details of the first few tokens.

```
documents = addPartOfSpeechDetails(documents);
tdetails = tokenDetails(documents);
head(tdetails)
```

ans=8×7 table

Token	DocumentNumber	SentenceNumber	LineNumber	Type	Language
"fairest"	1	1	1	letters	en
"creatures"	1	1	1	letters	en
"desire"	1	1	1	letters	en
"increase"	1	1	1	letters	en
"thereby"	1	1	1	letters	en
"beautys"	1	1	1	letters	en
"rose"	1	1	1	letters	en
"might"	1	1	1	letters	en

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Output Arguments

### **tdetails** — Table of token details

table

Table of token details. `tdetails` has the following variables:

Name	Description
Token	Token text, returned as a string scalar.
DocumentNumber	Index of document that the token belongs to, returned as a positive integer.
SentenceNumber	Sentence number of token in document, returned as a positive integer. If these details are missing, then first add sentence details to documents using the <code>addSentenceDetails</code> function.
LineNumber	Line number of token in document, returned as a positive integer.

Name	Description
Type	<p>The type of token, returned as one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'letters' - string of letter characters only</li><li>• 'digits' - string of digits only</li><li>• 'punctuation' - string of punctuation and symbol characters only</li><li>• 'email-address' - detected email address</li><li>• 'web-address' - detected web address</li><li>• 'hashtag' - detected hashtag (starts with "#" character followed by a letter)</li><li>• 'at-mention' - detected at-mention (starts with "@" character)</li><li>• 'emoticon' - detected emoticon</li><li>• 'emoji' - detected emoji</li><li>• 'other' - does not belong to the previous types and is not a custom type</li></ul> <p>If these details are missing, then first add type details to documents using the <code>addTypeDetails</code> function.</p>

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
Language	<p>Language of the token, returned as one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'en' - English</li><li>• 'ja' - Japanese</li><li>• 'de' - German</li><li>• 'ko' - Korean</li></ul> <p>These language details determine the behavior of the <code>removeStopWords</code>, <code>addPartOfSpeechDetails</code>, <code>normalizeWords</code>, <code>addSentenceDetails</code>, and <code>addEntityDetails</code> functions on the tokens.</p> <p>If these details are missing, then first add language details to documents using the <code>addLanguageDetails</code> function.</p> <p>For more information about language support in Text Analytics Toolbox, see “Language Considerations”.</p>

Name	Description
PartOfSpeech	<p>Part of speech tag, specified as one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'adjective'</li><li>• 'adposition'</li><li>• 'adverb'</li><li>• 'auxiliary-verb'</li><li>• 'coord-conjunction'</li><li>• 'determiner'</li><li>• 'interjection'</li><li>• 'noun'</li><li>• 'numeral'</li><li>• 'particle'</li><li>• 'pronoun'</li><li>• 'proper-noun'</li><li>• 'punctuation'</li><li>• 'subord-conjunction'</li><li>• 'symbol'</li><li>• 'verb'</li><li>• 'other'</li></ul> <p>If these details are missing, then first add part-of-speech details to documents using the <code>addPartOfSpeechDetails</code> function.</p>

Name	Description
Entity	Entity tag, specified as one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'location' - detected location</li><li>• 'organization' - detected organization</li><li>• 'person' - detected person</li><li>• 'other' - detected entity, not belonging to the above categories</li><li>• 'non-entity' - no entity detected</li></ul> If these details are missing, then first add entity details to documents using the <code>addEntityDetails</code> function.
Lemma	Lemma form. If these details are missing, then first lemma details to documents using the <code>addLemmaDetails</code> function.

## Compatibility Considerations

### **tokenDetails returns token type emoji for emoji characters**

*Behavior changed in R2018b*

Starting in R2018b, `tokenizedDocument` detects emoji characters and the `tokenDetails` function reports these tokens with type "emoji". This makes it easier to analyze text containing emoji characters.

In R2018a, `tokenDetails` reports emoji characters with type "other". To find the indices of the tokens with type "emoji" or "other", use the indices `idx = tdetails.Type == "emoji" | tdetails.Type == "other"`, where `tdetails` is a table of token details.

## See Also

[addEntityDetails](#) | [addLanguageDetails](#) | [addLemmaDetails](#) |  
[addPartOfSpeechDetails](#) | [addSentenceDetails](#) | [addTypeDetails](#) |  
[normalizeWords](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)  
[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)  
[“Language Considerations”](#)  
[“Japanese Language Support”](#)  
[“German Language Support”](#)

**Introduced in R2018a**

## topkwords

Most important words in bag-of-words model or LDA topic

### Syntax

```
tbl = topkwords(bag)
tbl = topkwords(bag, k)

tbl = topkwords(ldaMdl, k, topicIdx)
tbl = topkwords( ____, Name, Value)
```

### Description

`tbl = topkwords(bag)` returns a table of the five words with the largest word counts in bag-of-words model `bag`.

`tbl = topkwords(bag, k)` returns a table of the `k` words with the largest word counts.

`tbl = topkwords(ldaMdl, k, topicIdx)` returns a table of the `k` words with the highest probabilities in the latent Dirichlet allocation (LDA) topic `topicIdx` in the LDA model `ldaMdl`.

`tbl = topkwords( ____, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Most Frequent Words of Bag-of-Words Model

Create a table of the most frequent words of a bag-of-words model.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words



separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:
      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
      NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Find the top five words.

```
T = topkeywords(bag);
```

Find the top 20 words in the model.

```
k = 20;
T = topkeywords(bag,k)
```

```
T=20x2 table
      Word      Count
      ----      -
      "thy"      281
      "thou"     234
      "love"     162
      "thee"     161
      "doth"     88
      "mine"     63
      "shall"    59
      "eyes"     56
      "sweet"    55
      "time"     53
      "beauty"   52
```

```
"nor"      52
"art"      51
"yet"      51
"o"        50
"heart"    50
:
```

### Highest Probability Words of LDA Topic

Create a table of the words with highest probability of an LDA topic.

To reproduce the results, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents);
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To suppress verbose output, set `'Verbose'` to 0.

```
numTopics = 20;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics,'Verbose',0);
```

Find the top 20 words of the first topic.

```
k = 20;
topicIdx = 1;
tbl = topkwords(mdl,k,topicIdx)
```

```
tbl=20x2 table
      Word      Score
```

---

"eyes"	0.11155
"beauty"	0.05777
"hath"	0.055778
"still"	0.049801
"true"	0.043825
"mine"	0.033865
"find"	0.031873
"black"	0.025897
"look"	0.023905
"tis"	0.023905
"kind"	0.021913
"seen"	0.021913
"found"	0.017929
"sin"	0.015937
"three"	0.013945
"golden"	0.0099608
:	

Find the top 20 words of the first topic and use inverse mean scaling on the scores.

```
tbl = topkeywords(mdl,k,topicIdx, 'Scaling', 'inversemean')
```

```
tbl=20x2 table
```

Word	Score
"eyes"	1.2718
"beauty"	0.59022
"hath"	0.5692
"still"	0.50269
"true"	0.43719
"mine"	0.32764
"find"	0.32544
"black"	0.25931
"tis"	0.23755
"look"	0.22519
"kind"	0.21594
"seen"	0.21594
"found"	0.17326
"sin"	0.15223
"three"	0.13143
"golden"	0.090698

:

Create a word cloud using the scaled scores as the size data.

```
figure  
wordcloud(tbl.Word,tbl.Score);
```



## Input Arguments

**bag** — Input bag-of-words model  
bagOfWords object

Input bag-of-words model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object.

**k — Number of words**

nonnegative integer

Number of words to return, specified as a positive integer.

Example: 20

**ldaMdl — Input LDA model**

`LdaModel` object

Input LDA model, specified as an `LdaModel` object.

**topicIdx — Index of LDA topic**

nonnegative integer

Index of LDA topic, specified as a nonnegative integer.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'Scaling', 'inversemean'` specifies to use inverse mean scaling on the topic word probabilities.

**ForceCellOutput — Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array**

false (default) | true

Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array, specified as the comma separated pair consisting of `'ForceCellOutput'` and true or false.

This option only applies if the input data is a bag-of-words model.

Data Types: logical

**Scaling — Scaling to apply to topic word probabilities**

'none' (default) | 'inversemean'

Scaling to apply to topic word probabilities, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'Scaling'` and one of the following:

- 'none' - Return posterior word probabilities.
- 'inversemean' - Normalize the posterior word probabilities per topic by the geometric mean of the posterior probabilities for this word across all topics. The function uses the formula  $\text{Phi} \cdot (\log(\text{Phi}) - \text{mean}(\log(\text{Phi}), 1))$ , where Phi corresponds to `ldaMdl.TopicWordProbabilities`.

This option only applies if the input data is an LDA model.

Example: 'Scaling', 'inversemean'

Data Types: char

## Output Arguments

### **tbl** — Table of top words

table | cell array of tables

Table of top words sorted in order of importance or a cell array of tables.

When the input is a bag-of-words model, the table has the following columns:

Word	Word specified as a string
Count	Number of times the word appears in the bag-of-words model

If `bag` is a non-scalar array or 'ForceCellOutput' is true, then the function returns the outputs as a cell array of tables. Each element in the cell array is a table containing the top words of the corresponding element of `bag`.

When the input is an LDA model, the table has the following columns:

Word	Word specified as a string
Score	Word probability for the given LDA topic

## Tips

- To find the most frequently seen n-grams in a bag-of-n-grams model, use `topkngrams`.

## See Also

[bagOfNgrams](#) | [bagOfWords](#) | [ldaModel](#) | [removeInfrequentWords](#) | [removeWords](#) | [tfidf](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [topkngrams](#)

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)

[“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”](#)

[“Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases”](#)

[“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

**Introduced in R2017b**

## topkngrams

Most frequent n-grams

### Syntax

```
tbl = topkngrams(bag)
tbl = topkngrams(bag, k)
tbl = topkngrams( ____, Name, Value)
```

### Description

`tbl = topkngrams(bag)` returns a table listing the five most frequently seen n-grams in the bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`tbl = topkngrams(bag, k)` lists the `k` most frequently seen n-grams in the bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`tbl = topkngrams( ____, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments.

### Examples

#### Most Frequent Bigrams of Bag-of-N-Grams Model

Create a table of the most frequent bigrams of a bag-of-n-grams model.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
```



```
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-n-grams model.

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents)
```

```
bag =
  bagOfNgrams with properties:
    Counts: [154x8799 double]
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    Ngrams: [8799x2 string]
    NgramLengths: 2
    NumNgrams: 8799
    NumDocuments: 154
```

Find the top 5 bigrams.

```
tbl = topkngrams(bag)
```

```
tbl=5x3 table
      Ngram      Count      NgramLength
-----
"thou" "art"      34           2
"mine" "eye"      15           2
"thy"  "self"     14           2
"thou" "dost"     13           2
"mine" "own"      13           2
```

Find the top 10 bigrams.

```
tbl = topkngrams(bag,10)
```

```
tbl=10x3 table
      Ngram      Count      NgramLength
-----
"thou" "art"      34           2
"mine" "eye"      15           2
"thy"  "self"     14           2
"thou" "dost"     13           2
"mine" "own"      13           2
```

"thy"	"sweet"	12	2
"thy"	"love"	11	2
"dost"	"thou"	10	2
"thou"	"wilt"	10	2
"love"	"thee"	9	2

## Count N-Grams of Different Lengths

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-n-grams model. To count n-grams of length 2 and 3 (bigrams and trigrams), specify `'NgramLengths'` to be the vector `[2 3]`.

```
bag = bagOfNgrams(documents, 'NgramLengths', [2 3])
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfNgrams with properties:  
  
    Counts: [154×18022 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1×3092 string]  
    Ngrams: [18022×3 string]  
  NgramLengths: [2 3]  
    NumNgrams: 18022  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

View the 10 most common n-grams of length 2 (bigrams).

```
topkngrams(bag, 10, 'NgramLengths', 2)
```

```
ans=10×3 table  
      Ngram      Count      NgramLength  
-----
```

"thou"	"art"	" "	34	2
"mine"	"eye"	" "	15	2
"thy"	"self"	" "	14	2
"thou"	"dost"	" "	13	2
"mine"	"own"	" "	13	2
"thy"	"sweet"	" "	12	2
"thy"	"love"	" "	11	2
"dost"	"thou"	" "	10	2
"thou"	"wilt"	" "	10	2
"love"	"thee"	" "	9	2

View the 10 most common n-grams of length 3 (trigrams).

```
topkngrams(bag, 10, 'NGramLengths', 3)
```

ans=10x3 table

Ngram			Count	NgramLength
"thy"	"sweet"	"self"	4	3
"why"	"dost"	"thou"	4	3
"thy"	"self"	"thy"	3	3
"thou"	"thy"	"self"	3	3
"mine"	"eye"	"heart"	3	3
"thou"	"shalt"	"find"	3	3
"fair"	"kind"	"true"	3	3
"thou"	"art"	"fair"	2	3
"love"	"thy"	"self"	2	3
"thy"	"self"	"thou"	2	3

## Input Arguments

**bag** — Input bag-of-n-grams model

bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a bagOfNgrams object.

**k** — Number of n-grams

nonnegative integer

Number of n-grams to return, specified as a positive integer.

Example: 20

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'NgramLengths', [2 3]` specifies to return the top bigrams and trigrams.

### **NgramLengths** — N-gram lengths

positive integer | vector of positive integers

N-gram lengths, specified as the comma separated pair consisting of `'NgramLengths'` and a positive integer or a vector of positive integers.

If you specify `NgramLengths`, then the function returns n-grams of these lengths only. If you do not specify `NgramLengths`, then the function returns the top n-grams regardless of length.

Example: `[1 2 3]`

### **ForceCellOutput** — Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array

false (default) | true

Indicator for forcing output to be returned as cell array, specified as the comma separated pair consisting of `'ForceCellOutput'` and `true` or `false`.

Data Types: logical

## Output Arguments

### **tbl** — Table of top n-grams

table | cell array of tables

Table of top n-grams sorted in order of frequency or a cell array of tables.

The table has the following columns:

Ngram	N-gram specified as a string vector
Count	Number of times the n-gram appears in the bag-of-n-grams model.
NgramLength	Length of the n-gram.

If `bag` is a non-scalar array or `'ForceCellOutput'` is `true`, then the function returns the outputs as a cell array of tables. Each element in the cell array is a table containing the top n-grams of the corresponding element of `bag`.

## See Also

[bagOfNgrams](#) | [bagOfWords](#) | [removeInfrequentNgrams](#) | [removeNgrams](#) | [tfidf](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [topkwords](#)

## Topics

["Prepare Text Data for Analysis"](#)  
["Create Simple Text Model for Classification"](#)  
["Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models"](#)  
["Analyze Text Data Using Multiword Phrases"](#)  
["Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds"](#)  
["Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning"](#)

**Introduced in R2018a**

## topLevelDomains

List of top-level domains

### Syntax

```
domains = topLevelDomains
```

### Description

`domains = topLevelDomains` returns a string array of common top-level internet domain names which you can use to tokenize documents containing URLs.

### Examples

#### List of Top-Level Domains

View list of top-level domains used to detect web addresses in strings. Reshape the output for readability.

```
domains = topLevelDomains;  
reshape(domains, [], 5)
```

```
ans = 51x5 string array  
"com"    "ck"    "hn"    "mp"    "si"  
"edu"    "cl"    "hr"    "mq"    "sj"  
"gov"    "cm"    "ht"    "mr"    "sk"  
"int"    "cn"    "hu"    "ms"    "sl"  
"mil"    "co"    "id"    "mt"    "sm"  
"net"    "cr"    "ie"    "mu"    "sn"  
"org"    "cu"    "il"    "mv"    "so"  
"info"   "cv"    "im"    "mw"    "sr"  
"ac"     "cw"    "in"    "mx"    "st"  
"ad"     "cx"    "io"    "my"    "su"  
"ae"     "cy"    "iq"    "mz"    "sv"  
"af"     "cz"    "ir"    "na"    "sx"
```

"ag"	"de"	"is"	"nc"	"sy"
"ai"	"dj"	"it"	"ne"	"sz"
"am"	"dk"	"je"	"nf"	"tc"
"ao"	"dm"	"jm"	"ng"	"td"
"aq"	"do"	"jo"	"ni"	"tf"
"ar"	"dz"	"jp"	"nl"	"tg"
"as"	"ec"	"ke"	"no"	"th"
"at"	"ee"	"kg"	"np"	"tj"
"au"	"eg"	"kh"	"nr"	"tk"
"aw"	"er"	"ki"	"nu"	"tl"
"ax"	"es"	"km"	"nz"	"tm"
"az"	"et"	"kp"	"om"	"tn"
"ba"	"eu"	"kr"	"pa"	"to"
"bb"	"fi"	"kw"	"pe"	"tr"
"bd"	"fj"	"ky"	"pf"	"tt"
"be"	"fk"	"kz"	"pg"	"tv"
"bf"	"fm"	"la"	"ph"	"tw"
"bg"	"fo"	"lb"	"pk"	"tz"
⋮				

## See Also

[addPartOfSpeechDetails](#) | [addSentenceDetails](#) | [addTypeDetails](#) | [tokenDetails](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#)

## Topics

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

[“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”](#)

**Introduced in R2018a**

## trainWordEmbedding

Train word embedding

### Syntax

```
emb = trainWordEmbedding(filename)
emb = trainWordEmbedding(documents)
emb = trainWordEmbedding( ____,Name,Value)
```

### Description

`emb = trainWordEmbedding(filename)` trains a word embedding using the training data stored in the text file `filename`. The file is a collection of documents stored in UTF-8 with one document per line and words separated by whitespace.

`emb = trainWordEmbedding(documents)` trains a word embedding using `documents` by creating a temporary file with `writeTextDocument`, and then trains an embedding using the temporary file.

`emb = trainWordEmbedding( ____,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments. For example, `'Dimension',50` specifies the word embedding dimension to be 50.

### Examples

#### Train Word Embedding from File

Train a word embedding of dimension 20 using the example text file `exampleSonnetsDocuments.txt`. This file contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets, with one sonnet per line and words separated by a space.

```
filename = "exampleSonnetsDocuments.txt";
emb = trainWordEmbedding(filename)
```

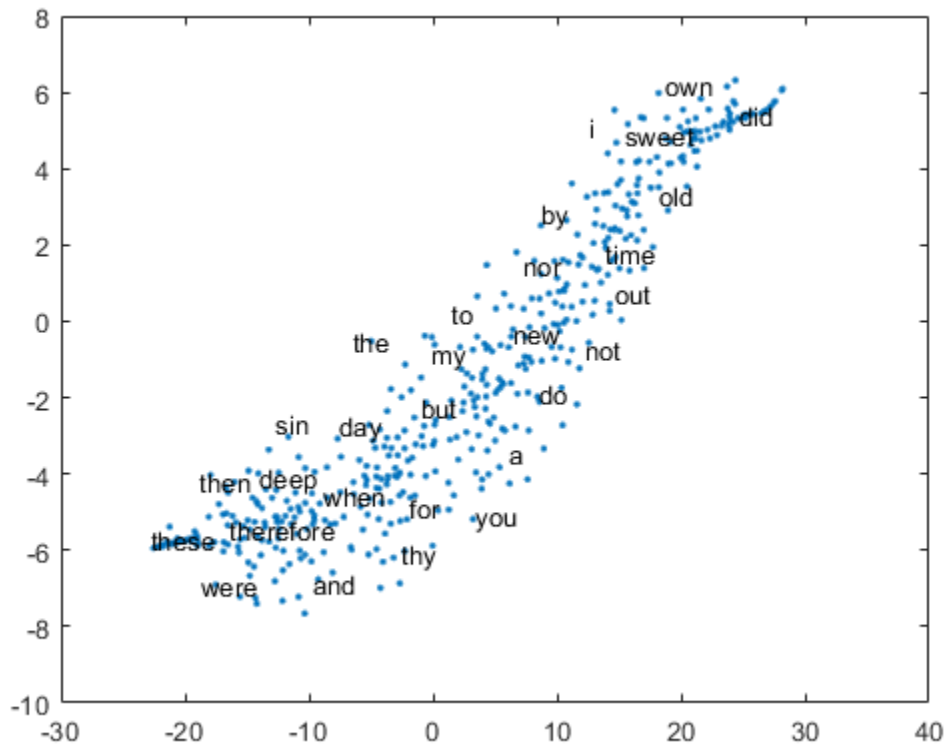


Training: 100% Loss: 0 Remaining time: 0 hours 0 minutes.

```
emb =  
wordEmbedding with properties:  
  
Dimension: 100  
Vocabulary: [1x502 string]
```

View the word embedding in a text scatter plot using `tsne`.

```
words = emb.Vocabulary;  
V = word2vec(emb,words);  
XY = tsne(V);  
textscatter(XY,words)
```



## Train Word Embedding from Documents

Train a word embedding using the example data `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`. This file contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Train a word embedding using `trainWordEmbedding`.

```
emb = trainWordEmbedding(documents)
```

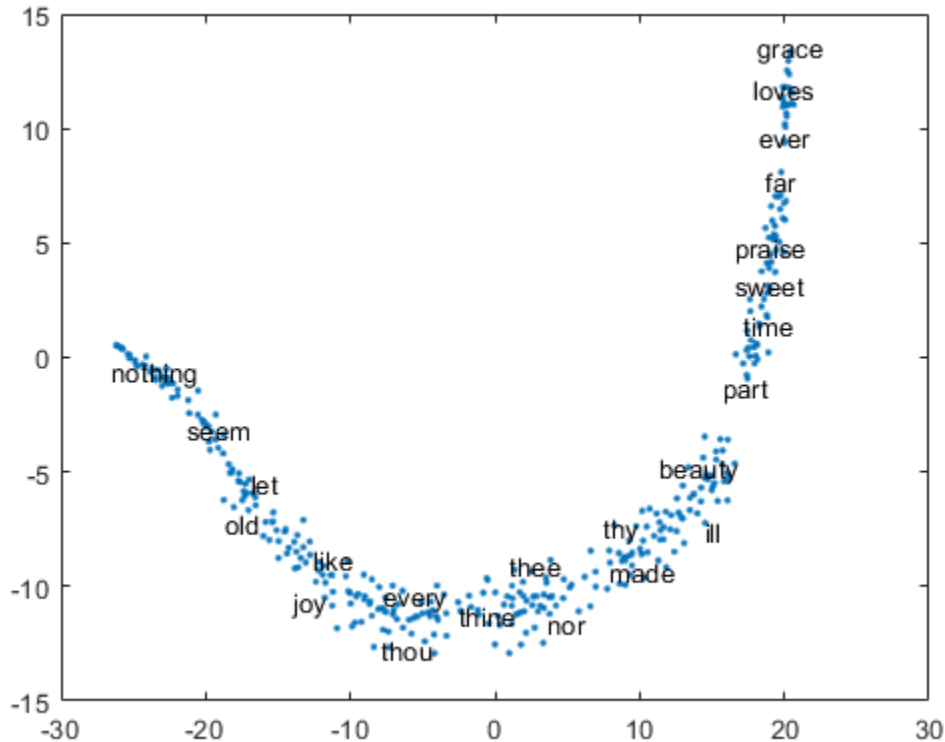
```
Training: 100% Loss: 2.72358 Remaining time: 0 hours 0 minutes.
```

```
emb =  
wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
    Dimension: 100  
    Vocabulary: [1x401 string]
```

Visualize the word embedding in a text scatter plot using `tsne`.

```
words = emb.Vocabulary;  
V = word2vec(emb,words);  
XY = tsne(V);  
textscatter(XY,words)
```



### Specify Word Embedding Options

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Specify the word embedding dimension to be 50. To reduce the number of words discarded by the model, set 'MinCount' to 3. To train for longer, set the number of epochs to 10.

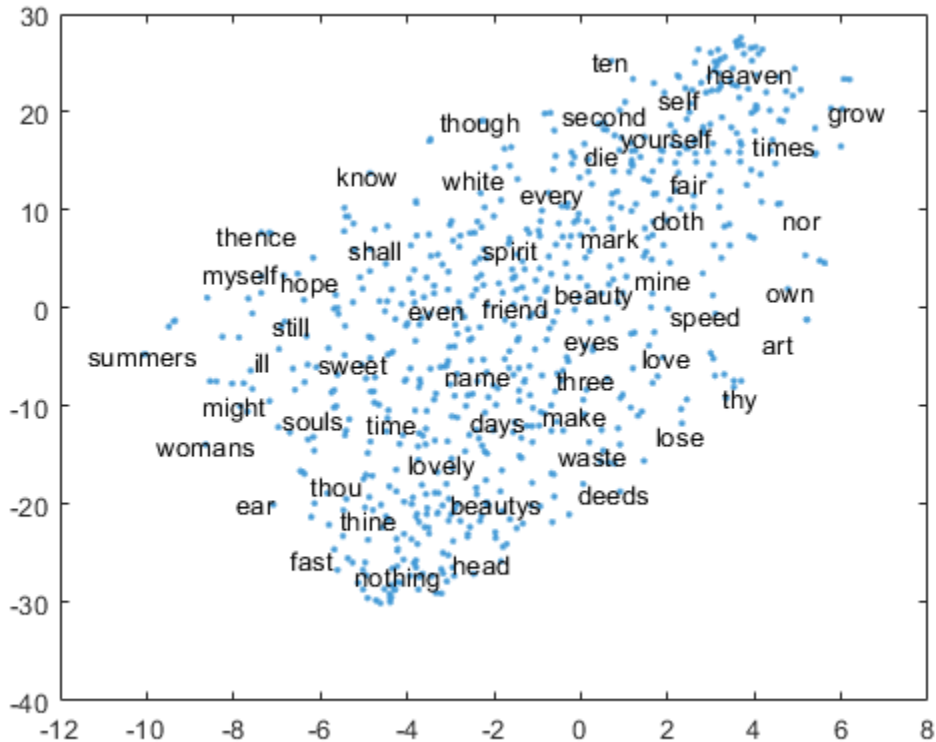
```
emb = trainWordEmbedding(documents, ...  
    'Dimension',50, ...  
    'MinCount',3, ...  
    'NumEpochs',10)
```

```
Training: 100% Loss: 0          Remaining time: 0 hours 0 minutes.
```

```
emb =  
wordEmbedding with properties:  
  
    Dimension: 50  
    Vocabulary: [1x750 string]
```

View the word embedding in a text scatter plot using `tsne`.

```
words = emb.Vocabulary;  
V = word2vec(emb, words);  
XY = tsne(V);  
textscatter(XY,words)
```



## Input Arguments

### **filename** — Name of file

string scalar | character vector

Name of the file, specified as a string scalar or character vector.

Data Types: string | char

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'Dimension', 50` specifies the word embedding dimension to be 50.

### **Dimension — Dimension of word embedding**

100 (default) | positive integer

Dimension of the word embedding, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'Dimension'` and a nonnegative integer.

Example: 300

### **Window — Size of context window**

5 (default) | nonnegative integer

Size of the context window, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'Window'` and a nonnegative integer.

Example: 10

### **Model — Model**

`'skipgram'` (default) | `'cbow'`

Model, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'Model'` and `'skipgram'` (skip gram) or `'cbow'` (continuous bag-of-words).

Example: `'cbow'`

### **DiscardFactor — Factor to determine word discard rate**

1e-4 (default) | positive scalar

Factor to determine the word discard rate, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DiscardFactor'` and a positive scalar. The function discards a word from the input window with probability  $1 - \sqrt{t/f} - t/f$  where  $f$  is the unigram probability of the word, and  $t$  is `DiscardFactor`. Usually, `DiscardFactor` is in the range of  $1e-3$  through  $1e-5$ .

Example: 0.005

### **LossFunction — Loss function**

'ns' (default) | 'hs' | 'softmax'

Loss function, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'LossFunction' and 'ns' (negative sampling), 'hs' (hierarchical softmax), or 'softmax' (softmax).

Example: 'hs'

### **NumNegativeSamples — Number of negative samples**

5 (default) | positive integer

Number of negative samples for the negative sampling loss function, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'NumNegativeSamples' and a positive integer. This option is only valid when LossFunction is 'ns'.

Example: 10

### **NumEpochs — Number of epochs**

5 (default) | positive integer

Number of epochs for training, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'NumEpochs' and a positive integer.

Example: 10

### **MinCount — Minimum count of words**

5 (default) | positive integer

Minimum count of words to include in the embedding, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'MinCount' and a positive integer. The function discards words that appear fewer than MinCount times in the training data from the vocabulary.

Example: 10

### **NGramRange — Inclusive range for subword n-grams**

[3 6] (default) | vector of two nonnegative integers

Inclusive range for subword n-grams, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'NGramRange' and a vector of two nonnegative integers [min max]. If you do not want to use n-grams, then set 'NGramRange' to [0 0].

Example: [5 10]

## **InitialLearnRate — Initial learn rate**

0.05 (default) | positive scalar

Initial learn rate, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'InitialLearnRate' and a positive scalar.

Example: 0.01

## **UpdateRate — Rate for updating learn rate**

100 (default) | positive integer

Rate for updating the learn rate, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'UpdateRate' and a positive integer. The learn rate decreases to zero linearly in steps every  $N$  words where  $N$  is the UpdateRate.

Example: 50

## **Verbose — Verbosity level**

1 (default) | 0

Verbosity level, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'Verbose' and one of the following:

- 0 - Do not display verbose output.
- 1 - Display progress information.

Example: 'Verbose', 0

## **Output Arguments**

### **emb — Output word embedding**

word embedding

Output word embedding, returned as a wordEmbedding object.



## More About

### Language Considerations

File input to the `trainWordEmbedding` function requires words separated by whitespace.

For files containing non-English text, you might need to input a `tokenizedDocument` array to `trainWordEmbedding`.

To create a `tokenizedDocument` array from pretokenized text, use the `tokenizedDocument` function and set the `'TokenizeMethod'` option to `'none'`.

### Tips

The training algorithm uses the number of threads given by the function `maxNumCompThreads`. To learn how to change the number of threads used by MATLAB, see `maxNumCompThreads`.

### See Also

`doc2sequence` | `fastTextWordEmbedding` | `readWordEmbedding` |  
`tokenizedDocument` | `vec2word` | `word2vec` | `wordEmbedding` |  
`wordEmbeddingLayer` | `wordEncoding` | `writeWordEmbedding`

### Topics

*“Train a Sentiment Classifier”*

*“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”*

*“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”*

*“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”*

**Introduced in R2017b**

## transform

Transform documents into lower-dimensional space

### Syntax

```
dscores = transform(lsaMdl, documents)
dscores = transform(lsaMdl, bag)
dscores = transform(lsaMdl, counts)
```

```
dscores = transform(ldaMdl, documents)
dscores = transform(ldaMdl, bag)
dscores = transform(ldaMdl, counts)
dscores = transform( ____, Name, Value)
```

### Description

`dscores = transform(lsaMdl, documents)` transforms documents into the semantic space of the latent semantic analysis (LSA) model `lsaMdl`.

`dscores = transform(lsaMdl, bag)` transforms documents represented by the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag` into the semantic space of the LSA model `lsaMdl`.

`dscores = transform(lsaMdl, counts)` transforms documents represented by the matrix of word counts into the semantic space of the LSA model `lsaMdl`.

`dscores = transform(ldaMdl, documents)` transforms documents into the latent Dirichlet allocation (LDA) topic probability space of LDA model `ldaMdl`. The rows of `dscores` are the topic mixture representations of the documents.

`dscores = transform(ldaMdl, bag)` transforms documents represented by the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag` into the LDA topic probability space of LDA model `ldaMdl`.

`dscores = transform(ldaMdl, counts)` transforms documents represented by the matrix of word counts into the LDA topic probability space of LDA model `ldaMdl`.

`dscores = transform( ____, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments. These name-value pairs only apply if the input model is an `LdaModel` object.

## Examples

### Transform Documents into LSA Semantic Space

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)  
  
bag =  
    bagOfWords with properties:  
  
        Counts: [154x3092 double]  
        Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
        NumWords: 3092  
        NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LSA model with 20 components.

```
numComponents = 20;  
mdl = fitlsa(bag,numComponents)  
  
mdl =  
    LsaModel with properties:  
  
        NumComponents: 20  
        ComponentWeights: [1x20 double]  
        DocumentScores: [154x20 double]
```

```
WordScores: [3092x20 double]
Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
FeatureStrengthExponent: 2
```

Use `transform` to transform the first 10 documents into the semantic space of the LSA model.

```
dscores = transform mdl, documents(1:10)
```

```
dscores = 10x20
```

```
5.6059 -1.8559 0.9286 -0.7086 -0.4652 -0.8340 -0.6751 0.0611 0.2
7.3069 -2.3578 1.8359 -2.3442 -1.5776 -2.0310 -0.7948 1.3411 -1.7
7.1056 -2.3508 -2.8837 -1.0688 -0.3462 -0.6962 -0.0334 -0.0472 0.4
8.6292 -3.0471 -0.8512 -0.4356 -0.3055 0.4671 1.4219 -0.8454 -0.8
1.0434 1.7490 0.8703 -2.2315 -1.1221 0.2848 2.0522 -0.6975 1.7
6.8358 -2.0806 -3.3798 -1.0452 -0.2075 2.0970 0.4477 0.2080 0.9
2.3847 0.3923 -0.4323 -1.5340 0.4023 -1.0396 1.0326 0.3776 0.2
3.7925 -0.3941 -4.4610 -0.4930 0.4651 0.3404 0.5493 0.1470 0.5
4.6522 0.7188 -1.1787 -0.8996 0.3360 0.4531 0.1935 0.3328 -0.8
8.8218 -0.8168 -2.5101 1.1197 -0.8673 -1.2336 -0.0768 0.1943 -0.7
```

## Transform Documents into LDA Topic Mixtures

To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to `'default'`.

```
rng('default')
```

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```

bag =
  bagOfWords with properties:

      Counts: [154x3092 double]
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    NumWords: 3092
  NumDocuments: 154

```

Fit an LDA model with five topics.

```

numTopics = 5;
mdl = fitlda(bag,numTopics)

```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.323227 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.20		1.212e+03	1.250	0
1	0.20	1.2300e-02	1.112e+03	1.250	0
2	0.26	1.3254e-03	1.102e+03	1.250	0
3	0.21	2.9402e-05	1.102e+03	1.250	0

```

mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:

      NumTopics: 5
    WordConcentration: 1
    TopicConcentration: 1.2500
  CorpusTopicProbabilities: [0.2000 0.2000 0.2000 0.2000 0.2000]
  DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x5 double]
    TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x5 double]
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
    TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
      FitInfo: [1x1 struct]

```

Use `transform` to transform the documents into a vector of topic probabilities. You can visualize these mixtures using stacked bar charts. View the topic mixtures of the first 10 documents.

```

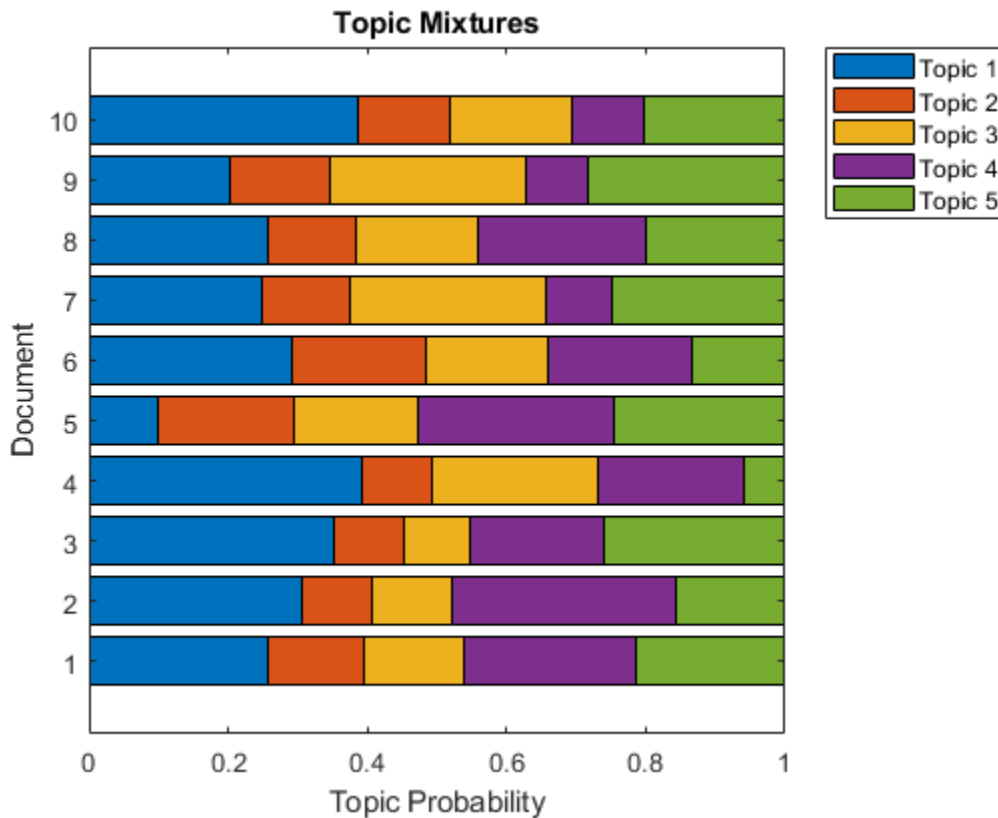
topicMixtures = transform(mdl,documents(1:10));
figure

```

```

barh(topicMixtures, 'stacked')
xlim([0 1])
title("Topic Mixtures")
xlabel("Topic Probability")
ylabel("Document")
legend("Topic " + string(1:numTopics), 'Location', 'northeastoutside')

```



### Transform Word Count Matrix into LDA Topic Mixtures

Load the example data. `sonnetsCounts.mat` contains a matrix of word counts and a corresponding vocabulary of preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets.

```
load sonnetsCounts.mat
size(counts)
```

```
ans = 1x2
```

```
    154    3092
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To reproduce the results in this example, set `rng` to 'default'.

```
rng('default')
numTopics = 20;
mdl = fitlda(counts,numTopics)
```

Initial topic assignments sampled in 0.110158 seconds.

Iteration	Time per iteration (seconds)	Relative change in log(L)	Training perplexity	Topic concentration	Topic concentration iterations
0	0.12		1.159e+03	5.000	0
1	0.09	5.4884e-02	8.028e+02	5.000	0
2	0.30	4.7400e-03	7.778e+02	5.000	0
3	0.20	3.4597e-03	7.602e+02	5.000	0
4	0.10	3.4662e-03	7.430e+02	5.000	0
5	0.12	2.9259e-03	7.288e+02	5.000	0
6	0.09	6.4180e-05	7.291e+02	5.000	0

```
mdl =
  ldaModel with properties:
```

```
    NumTopics: 20
   WordConcentration: 1
   TopicConcentration: 5
 CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]
 DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]
  TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]
   Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
   TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'
   FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Use `transform` to transform the documents into a vector of topic probabilities.

```
topicMixtures = transform mdl, counts(1:10, :))
```

```
topicMixtures = 10x20
```

```
    0.0167    0.0035    0.1645    0.0977    0.0433    0.0833    0.0987    0.0033    0.0
    0.0711    0.0544    0.0116    0.0044    0.0033    0.0033    0.0431    0.0053    0.0
    0.0293    0.0482    0.1078    0.0322    0.0036    0.0036    0.0464    0.0036    0.0
    0.0055    0.0962    0.2403    0.0033    0.0296    0.1613    0.0164    0.0955    0.0
    0.0341    0.0224    0.0341    0.0645    0.0948    0.0038    0.0189    0.1099    0.0
    0.0445    0.0035    0.1167    0.0034    0.0446    0.0583    0.1268    0.0169    0.0
    0.1720    0.0764    0.0090    0.0180    0.0325    0.1213    0.0036    0.0036    0.0
    0.0043    0.0033    0.1248    0.0033    0.0299    0.0033    0.0690    0.1699    0.0
    0.0412    0.0387    0.0555    0.0165    0.0166    0.0433    0.0033    0.0038    0.0
    0.0362    0.0035    0.1117    0.0304    0.0034    0.1248    0.0439    0.0340    0.0
```

## Input Arguments

### **lsaMdl** — Input LSA model

lsaModel object

Input LSA model, specified as an lsaModel object.

### **ldaMdl** — Input LDA model

ldaModel object

Input LDA model, specified as an ldaModel object.

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array | string array of words | cell array of character vectors

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array, a string array of words, or a cell array of character vectors. If documents is a tokenizedDocument, then it must be a column vector. If documents is a string array or a cell array of character vectors, then it must be a row of the words of a single document.

---

**Tip** To ensure that the function does not discard useful information, you must first preprocess the input documents using the same steps used to preprocess the documents used to train the model.

---



**bag — Input model**

bagOfWords object | bagOfNgrams object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

**counts — Frequency counts of words**

matrix of nonnegative integers

Frequency counts of words, specified as a matrix of nonnegative integers. If you specify `'DocumentsIn'` to be `'rows'`, then the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the *j*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *i*th document. Otherwise, the value `counts(i, j)` corresponds to the number of times the *i*th word of the vocabulary appears in the *j*th document.

**Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'IterationLimit', 200` sets the iteration limit to 200.

---

**Note** These name-value pairs only apply if the input model is an `LdaModel` object.

---

**DocumentsIn — Orientation of documents**

`'rows'` (default) | `'columns'`

Orientation of documents in the word count matrix, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'DocumentsIn'` and one of the following:

- `'rows'` - Input is a matrix of word counts with rows corresponding to documents.
- `'columns'` - Input is a transposed matrix of word counts with columns corresponding to documents.

This option only applies if you specify the input documents as a matrix of word counts.

**Note** If you orient your word count matrix so that documents correspond to columns and specify 'DocumentsIn', 'columns', then you might experience a significant reduction in optimization-execution time.

---

### **IterationLimit — Maximum number of iterations**

100 (default) | positive integer

Maximum number of iterations, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'IterationLimit' and a positive integer.

Example: 'IterationLimit',200

### **LogLikelihoodTolerance — Relative tolerance on log-likelihood**

0.0001 (default) | positive scalar

Relative tolerance on log-likelihood, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of 'LogLikelihoodTolerance' and a positive scalar. The optimization terminates when this tolerance is reached.

Example: 'LogLikelihoodTolerance',0.001

## **Output Arguments**

### **dscores — Output document scores**

matrix

Output document scores, returned as a matrix of score vectors.

## **See Also**

bagOfWords | fitlda | fitlsa | ldaModel | logp | lsaModel | predict | wordcloud

## **Topics**

“Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Extract Text Data from Files”

### **Introduced in R2017b**

# upper

Convert documents to uppercase

## Syntax

```
newDocuments = upper(documents)
```

## Description

`newDocuments = upper(documents)` converts each lowercase character in the input documents to the corresponding uppercase character, and leaves all other characters unchanged.

## Examples

### Convert Documents to Uppercase

Convert all lowercase characters in an array of documents to uppercase.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
  "An Example of a Short Sentence"
  "A Second Short Sentence"])

documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: An Example of a Short Sentence
    4 tokens: A Second Short Sentence

newDocuments = upper(documents)

newDocuments =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

6 tokens: AN EXAMPLE OF A SHORT SENTENCE  
4 tokens: A SECOND SHORT SENTENCE

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## Output Arguments

### **newDocuments** — Output documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Output documents, returned as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## See Also

`decodeHTMLEntities` | `erasePunctuation` | `eraseTags` | `eraseURLs` | `lower` | `tokenizedDocument`

## Topics

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# vaderSentimentScores

Sentiment scores with VADER algorithm

## Syntax

```
compoundScores = vaderSentimentScores(documents)
[compoundScores, positiveScores, negativeScores, neutralScores] =
vaderSentimentScores(documents)
___ = vaderSentimentScores(___ ,Name,Value)
```

## Description

Use `vaderSentimentScores` to evaluate sentiment in tokenized text with the Valence Aware Dictionary and sEntiment Reasoner (VADER) algorithm. The `vaderSentimentScores` function uses, by default, the VADER sentiment lexicon and modifier word lists.

The function supports English text only.

`compoundScores = vaderSentimentScores(documents)` returns sentiment scores for tokenized documents. The function calculates the compound scores by aggregating individual token scores, adjusted according to the algorithm rules and then normalized between -1 and 1. The function discards all tokens with a single character, not present in the sentiment lexicon.

`[compoundScores, positiveScores, negativeScores, neutralScores] = vaderSentimentScores(documents)` also returns the ratios for proportions of the documents which are positive, negative, and neutral, respectively.

`___ = vaderSentimentScores(___ ,Name,Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pairs.

## Examples

## Evaluate Sentiment in Text

Create a tokenized document.

```
str = [  
    "The book was VERY good!!!!"  
    "The book was not very good."];  
documents = tokenizedDocument(str);
```

Evaluate the sentiment of the tokenized documents. Scores close to 1 indicate positive sentiment, scores close to -1 indicate negative sentiment, and scores close to 0 indicate neutral sentiment.

```
compoundScores = vaderSentimentScores(documents)  
  
compoundScores = 2×1  
  
    0.7264  
   -0.3865
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

## Name-Value Pair Arguments

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of **Name**, **Value** arguments. **Name** is the argument name and **Value** is the corresponding value. **Name** must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as **Name1**, **Value1**, ..., **NameN**, **ValueN**.

Example: 'Boosters', ["verry" "verrry"] specifies to use the boosters "verry" and "verrry".

### **SentimentLexicon** — Sentiment lexicon

table

Sentiment lexicon, specified as a table with the following columns:

- `Token` - Token, specified as a string scalar.
- `SentimentScore` - Sentiment score of token, specified as a numeric scalar.

When evaluating sentiment, the software, by default, ignores tokens with one character and replaces emojis with an equivalent textual description before computing the sentiment scores. For example, the software replaces instances of the emoji "😊" with the text "grinning face" and then evaluates the sentiment scores. If you provide tokens with one character or emojis with corresponding sentiment scores in `SentimentLexicon`, then the function does not remove or replace these tokens.

The default sentiment lexicon is the VADER sentiment lexicon.

Data Types: `table`

### **Boosters — List of booster words or n-grams**

`string array`

List of booster words or n-grams, specified as a string array.

The function uses booster n-grams to boost the sentiment of proceeding tokens. For example, words like "absolutely" and "amazingly".

For a list of words, the list must be a column vector. For a list of n-grams, the list has size `NumNgrams-by-maxN`, where `NumNgrams` is the number of n-grams, and `maxN` is the length of the largest n-gram. The  $(i, j)$ th element of the list is the  $j$ th word of the  $i$ th n-gram. If the number of words in the  $i$ th n-gram is less than `maxN`, then the remaining entries of the  $i$ th row of the list are empty.

The default list of booster n-grams is the VADER booster list.

Data Types: `string`

### **Dampeners — List of dampener words or n-grams**

`string array`

List of dampener words or n-grams, specified as a string array.

The function uses dampener n-grams to dampen the sentiment of proceeding tokens. For example, words like "hardly" and "somewhat".

For a list of words, the list must be a column vector. For a list of n-grams, the list has size `NumNgrams-by-maxN`, where `NumNgrams` is the number of n-grams, and `maxN` is the

length of the largest n-gram. The  $(i, j)$ th element of the list is the  $j$ th word of the  $i$ th n-gram. If the number of words in the  $i$ th n-gram is less than  $\text{maxN}$ , then the remaining entries of the  $i$ th row of the list are empty.

The default list of dampener n-grams is the VADER booster list.

Data Types: `string`

### **Negations — List of negation words**

`string` array

List of negation words, specified as a string array.

The function uses negation words to negate the sentiment of proceeding tokens. For example, words like "not" and "isn't".

The default list of negation words is the VADER negation list.

Data Types: `string`

## **Output Arguments**

### **compoundScores — Compound sentiment scores**

numeric vector

Compound sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document. The value `compoundScores(i)` corresponds to the compound sentiment score of `documents(i)`.

The function determines the compound scores is computed by aggregating individual token scores, adjusts them according to the VADER algorithm rules, and then normalizes them between -1 and 1.

### **positiveScores — Positive sentiment scores**

numeric vector

Positive sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document. The value `positiveScores(i)` corresponds to the positive sentiment score of `documents(i)`.

### **negativeScores — Negative sentiment scores**

numeric vector



Negative sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document. The value `negativeScores(i)` corresponds to the negative sentiment score of `documents(i)`.

### **neutralScores — Neutral sentiment scores**

numeric vector

Neutral sentiment scores, returned as a numeric vector. The function returns one score for each input document. The value `neutralScores(i)` corresponds to the neutral sentiment score of `documents(i)`.

## **References**

- [1] Hutto, Clayton J., and Eric Gilbert. "Vader: A parsimonious rule-based model for sentiment analysis of social media text." In *Eighth international AAAI conference on weblogs and social media*. 2014.

## **See Also**

`ratioSentimentScores` | `tokenizedDocument`

## **Topics**

"Analyze Sentiment in Text"

"Train a Sentiment Classifier"

"Create Simple Text Model for Classification"

"Analyze Text Data Containing Emojis"

"Analyze Text Data Using Topic Models"

**Introduced in R2019b**

## vec2word

Map embedding vector to word

### Syntax

```
words = vec2word(emb,M)
[words,dist] = vec2word(emb,M)
___ = vec2word(emb,M,k)
___ = vec2word( ___, 'Distance',distance)
```

### Description

`words = vec2word(emb,M)` returns the closest words to the embedding vectors in the rows of `M`.

`[words,dist] = vec2word(emb,M)` returns the closest words to the embedding vectors in `M`, and returns the distances `dist` of each to their source vectors.

`___ = vec2word(emb,M,k)` returns the top `k` closest words.

`___ = vec2word( ___, 'Distance',distance)` specifies the distance metric.

### Examples

#### Map Words to Vectors and Back

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
emb =
    wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 300
Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

Map the words "Italy", "Rome", and "Paris" to vectors using `word2vec`.

```
italy = word2vec(emb, "Italy");
rome = word2vec(emb, "Rome");
paris = word2vec(emb, "Paris");
```

Map the vector `italy - rome + paris` to a word using `vec2word`.

```
word = vec2word(emb, italy - rome + paris)
```

```
word =
"France"
```

### Find Closest Words to Vector

Find the top five closest words to a word embedding vector and their distances.

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Map the words "Italy", "Rome", and "Paris" to vectors using `word2vec`.

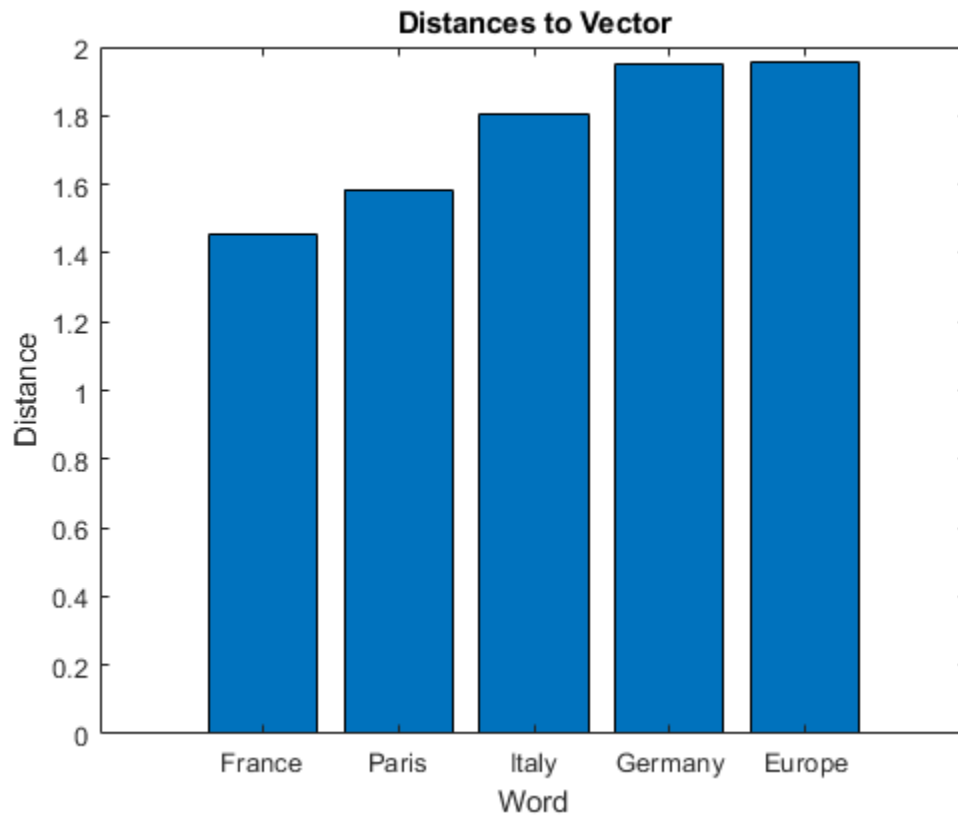
```
italy = word2vec(emb, "Italy");
rome = word2vec(emb, "Rome");
paris = word2vec(emb, "Paris");
```

Map the vector `italy - rome + paris` to a word using `vec2word`. Find the top five closest words using the Euclidean distance metric.

```
k = 5;
M = italy - rome + paris;
[words, dist] = vec2word(emb, M, k, 'Distance', 'euclidean');
```

Plot the words and distances in a bar chart.

```
figure;  
bar(dist)  
xticklabels(words)  
xlabel("Word")  
ylabel("Distance")  
title("Distances to Vector")
```



## Input Arguments

**emb** — Input word embedding  
wordEmbedding object

Input word embedding, specified as a `wordEmbedding` object.

**M — Word embedding vectors**

matrix

Word embedding vectors, specified as a matrix. Each row of `M` is a word embedding vector. `M` must have `emb.Dimension` columns.

**k — Number of closest words**

positive integer

Number of closest words to return, specified as a positive integer.

**distance — Distance metric**

'cosine' (default) | 'euclidean'

Distance metric, specified as 'cosine' or 'euclidean'.

## Output Arguments

**words — Output words**

string vector

Output words, returned as a string vector.

**dist — Distance of words to source vectors**

vector

Distance of words to their source vectors, returned as a vector.

## See Also

`doc2sequence` | `fastTextWordEmbedding` | `ind2word` | `isVocabularyWord` | `tokenizedDocument` | `word2ind` | `word2vec` | `wordEmbedding` | `wordEmbeddingLayer` | `wordEncoding`

## Topics

“Train a Sentiment Classifier”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”  
“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# word2ind

Map word to encoding index

## Syntax

```
M = word2ind(enc, words)
```

## Description

`M = word2ind(enc, words)` returns the indices of words in the encoding `enc`.

## Examples

### Map Words to Encoding Indices

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str, newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
documents(1:10)
```

```
ans =
    10x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega
61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants s
68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make sv
```

```
64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappear  
70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j  
70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless  
69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

Create a word encoding.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents)

enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:

    NumWords: 3092
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
```

Map the words "rose", "love", and "beauty" to encoding indices using the `word2ind` function.

```
words = ["rose" "love" "beauty"];
idx = word2ind(enc,words)

idx = 1x3

     7   387   79
```

## Input Arguments

### **enc** — Input word encoding

`wordEncoding` object

Input word encoding, specified as a `wordEncoding` object.

### **words** — Input words

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify `words` as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: string | char | cell



## Output Arguments

### **M** — Vector of word encoding indices

vector of positive integers

Vector of word encoding indices.

## See Also

[fastTextWordEmbedding](#) | [ind2word](#) | [isVocabularyWord](#) | [tokenizedDocument](#) | [word2vec](#) | [wordEmbedding](#) | [wordEmbeddingLayer](#) | [wordEncoding](#)

## Topics

[“Train a Sentiment Classifier”](#)

[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)

[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)

[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

**Introduced in R2018b**

## word2vec

Map word to embedding vector

### Syntax

```
M = word2vec(emb, words)
```

### Description

`M = word2vec(emb, words)` returns the embedding vectors of words in the embedding `emb`. If a word is not in the embedding vocabulary, then the function returns a row of NaNs.

### Examples

#### Map Words to Vectors and Back

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
```

```
emb =  
wordEmbedding with properties:  
  
    Dimension: 300  
    Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

Map the words "Italy", "Rome", and "Paris" to vectors using `word2vec`.

```
italy = word2vec(emb, "Italy");  
rome = word2vec(emb, "Rome");  
paris = word2vec(emb, "Paris");
```

Map the vector `italy - rome + paris` to a word using `vec2word`.

```
word = vec2word(emb, italy - rome + paris)
```

```
word =  
"France"
```

## Input Arguments

### **emb** — Input word embedding

wordEmbedding object

Input word embedding, specified as a `wordEmbedding` object.

### **words** — Input words

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify words as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Output Arguments

### **M** — Matrix of word embedding vectors

matrix

Matrix of word embedding vectors.

## See Also

`doc2sequence` | `fastTextWordEmbedding` | `isVocabularyWord` |  
`tokenizedDocument` | `vec2word` | `word2ind` | `wordEmbedding` | `wordEncoding`

## **Topics**

“Train a Sentiment Classifier”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

**Introduced in R2017b**

# wordcloud

Create word cloud chart from text, bag-of-words model, bag-of-n-grams model, or LDA model

## Syntax

```
wc = wordcloud(str)
wc = wordcloud(documents)
wc = wordcloud(bag)

wc = wordcloud(tbl,wordVar,sizeVar)
wc = wordcloud(words,sizeData)
wc = wordcloud(C)

wc = wordcloud(ldaMdl,topicIdx)

wc = wordcloud(parent, ___ )

wc = wordcloud( ___,Name,Value)
```

## Description

Text Analytics Toolbox extends the functionality of the `wordcloud` (MATLAB) function. It adds support for creating word clouds directly from string arrays, and creating word clouds from bag-of-words models, bag-of-n-gram models, and LDA topics. If you do not have Text Analytics Toolbox installed, then see `wordcloud` (MATLAB).

`wc = wordcloud(str)` creates a word cloud chart by tokenizing and preprocessing the text in `str`, and then displaying the words with sizes corresponding to the word frequency counts. This syntax supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

`wc = wordcloud(documents)` creates a word cloud chart from the words appearing in documents.

`wc = wordcloud(bag)` creates a word cloud chart from the bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model `bag`.

`wc = wordcloud(tbl, wordVar, sizeVar)` creates a word cloud chart from the table `tbl`. The variables `wordVar` and `sizeVar` in the table specify the words and word sizes respectively.

`wc = wordcloud(words, sizeData)` creates a word cloud chart from elements of `words` with word sizes specified by `sizeData`.

`wc = wordcloud(C)` creates a word cloud chart from the elements of categorical array `C` using frequency counts.

`wc = wordcloud(ldaMdl, topicIdx)` creates a word cloud chart from the topic with index `topicIdx` of the LDA model `ldaMdl`.

`wc = wordcloud(parent, ___)` creates the word cloud in the figure, panel, or tab specified by `parent`.

`wc = wordcloud( ___, Name, Value)` specifies additional `WordCloudChart` properties using one or more name-value pair arguments.

## Examples

### Create Word Cloud from Text Data

Extract the text from `sonnets.txt` using `extractFileText` and display the text of the first sonnet.

```
str = extractFileText("sonnets.txt");  
extractBefore(str, "II")
```

```
ans =  
"THE SONNETS
```

```
by William Shakespeare
```

```
I
```

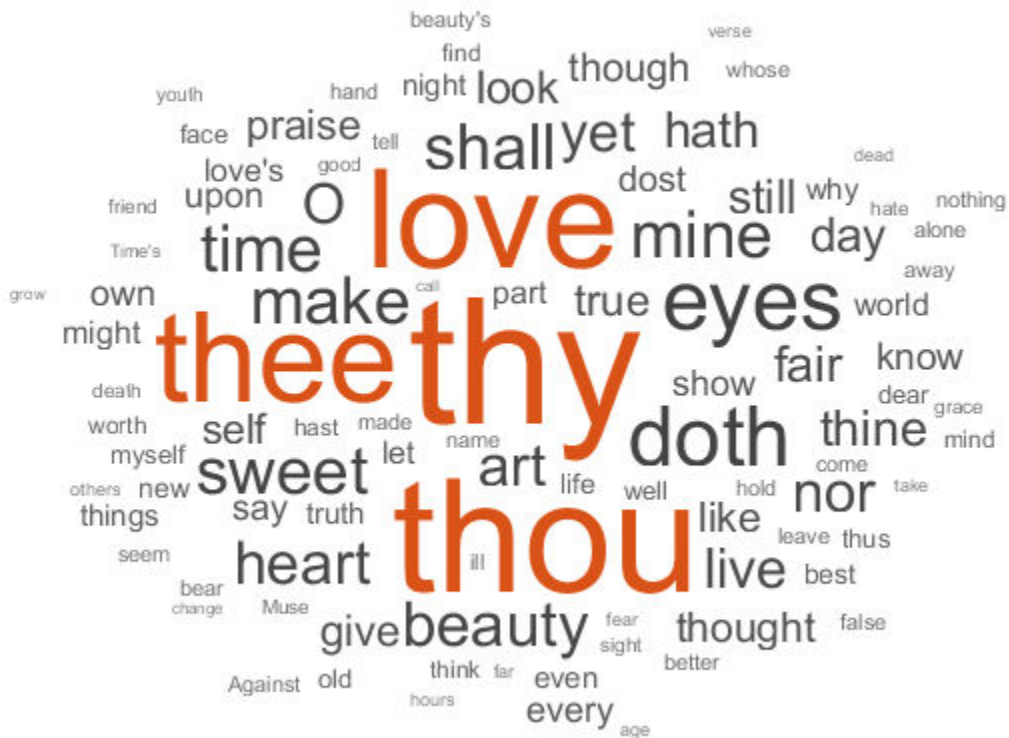
```
From fairest creatures we desire increase,  
That thereby beauty's rose might never die,
```

But as the riper should by time decease,  
His tender heir might bear his memory:  
But thou, contracted to thine own bright eyes,  
Feed'st thy light's flame with self-substantial fuel,  
Making a famine where abundance lies,  
Thy self thy foe, to thy sweet self too cruel:  
Thou that art now the world's fresh ornament,  
And only herald to the gaudy spring,  
Within thine own bud buriest thy content,  
And tender churl mak'st waste in niggarding:  
    Pity the world, or else this glutton be,  
    To eat the world's due, by the grave and thee.

"

Display the words from the sonnets in a word cloud.

```
figure  
wordcloud(str);
```



## Create Word Cloud from Tokenized Documents

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```





```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)
```

```
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
      Counts: [154x3092 double]  
      Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
      NumWords: 3092  
      NumDocuments: 154
```

Visualize the bag-of-words model using a word cloud.

```
figure  
wordcloud(bag);
```



```
{''tis' } 1
{'Amen' } 1
{'Fair' } 2
{'Gainst'} 1
{'Since' } 1
{'This' } 2
{'Thou' } 1
{'Thus' } 1
```

Plot the table data using `wordcloud`. Specify the words and corresponding word sizes to be the `Word` and `Count` variables respectively.

```
figure
wordcloud(tbl, 'Word', 'Count');
title("Sonnets Word Cloud")
```



```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str,newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a bag-of-words model using `bagOfWords`.

```
bag = bagOfWords(documents)  
  
bag =  
  bagOfWords with properties:  
  
      Counts: [154x3092 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
    NumWords: 3092  
  NumDocuments: 154
```

Fit an LDA model with 20 topics. To suppress verbose output, set `'Verbose'` to 0.

```
mdl = fitlda(bag,20,'Verbose',0)  
  
mdl =  
  ldaModel with properties:  
  
      NumTopics: 20  
  WordConcentration: 1  
  TopicConcentration: 5  
  CorpusTopicProbabilities: [1x20 double]  
  DocumentTopicProbabilities: [154x20 double]  
  TopicWordProbabilities: [3092x20 double]  
  Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]  
  TopicOrder: 'initial-fit-probability'  
  FitInfo: [1x1 struct]
```

Visualize the first four topics using word clouds.

```
figure  
for topicIdx = 1:4  
  subplot(2,2,topicIdx)  
  wordcloud(mdl,topicIdx);  
  title("Topic: " + topicIdx)  
end
```



Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## **documents — Input documents**

`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## **tbl — Input table**

`table`

Input table, with columns specifying the words and word sizes. Specify the words and the corresponding word sizes in the variables given by `wordVar` and `sizeVar` input arguments respectively.

Data Types: `table`

## **wordVar — Table variable for word data**

`string` scalar | `character` vector | `numeric` index | `logical` vector

Table variable for word data, specified as a `string` scalar, `character` vector, `numeric` index, or a `logical` vector.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `logical` | `char` | `string`

## **sizeVar — Table variable for size data**

`string` scalar | `character` vector | `numeric` index | `logical` vector

Table variable for size data, specified as a `string` scalar, `character` vector, `numeric` index, or a `logical` vector.

Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64` | `logical` | `char` | `string`

## **words — Input words**

`string` vector | `cell` array of `character` vectors

Input words, specified as a `string` vector or `cell` array of `character` vectors.

Data Types: `string` | `cell`

## **sizeData — Word size data**

`numeric` vector

Word size data, specified as a `numeric` vector.



Data Types: `single` | `double` | `int8` | `int16` | `int32` | `int64` | `uint8` | `uint16` | `uint32` | `uint64`

### **C — Input categorical data**

categorical array

Input categorical data, specified as a categorical array. The function plots each unique element of `C` with size corresponding to `histcounts(C)`.

Data Types: `categorical`

### **bag — Input model**

`bagOfWords` object | `bagOfNgrams` object

Input bag-of-words or bag-of-n-grams model, specified as a `bagOfWords` object or a `bagOfNgrams` object. If `bag` is a `bagOfNgrams` object, then the function treats the n-grams as individual words.

### **ldaMdl — Input LDA model**

`ldaModel` object

Input LDA model, specified as an `ldaModel` object.

### **topicIdx — Index of LDA topic**

nonnegative integer

Index of LDA topic, specified as a nonnegative integer.

### **parent — Parent**

`figure` | `panel` | `tab`

Parent specified as a figure, panel, or tab.

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, ..., NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'HighlightColor', 'blue'` specifies the highlight color to be blue.

The `WordCloudChart` properties listed here are only a subset. For a complete list, see [WordCloudChart Properties](#).

**MaxDisplayWords — Maximum number of words to display**

100 (default) | nonnegative integer

Maximum number of words to display, specified as a non-negative integer. The software displays the `MaxDisplayWords` largest words.

**Color — Word color**







[0.2510 0.2510 0.2510] (default) | RGB triplet | character vector containing a color name | matrix



Word color, specified as an RGB triplet, a character vector containing a color name, or an N-by-3 matrix where N is the length of `WordData`. If `Color` is a matrix, then each row corresponds to an RGB triplet for the corresponding word in `WordData`.

RGB triplets and hexadecimal color codes are useful for specifying custom colors.


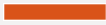





- An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range [0,1]; for example, [0.4 0.6 0.7].
- A hexadecimal color code is a character vector or a string scalar that starts with a hash symbol (#) followed by three or six hexadecimal digits, which can range from 0 to F. The values are not case sensitive. Thus, the color codes '#FF8800', '#ff8800', '#F80', and '#f80' are equivalent.

Alternatively, you can specify some common colors by name. This table lists the named color options, the equivalent RGB triplets, and hexadecimal color codes.

Color Name	Short Name	RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
'red'	'r'	[1 0 0]	'#FF0000'	
'green'	'g'	[0 1 0]	'#00FF00'	
'blue'	'b'	[0 0 1]	'#0000FF'	
'cyan'	'c'	[0 1 1]	'#00FFFF'	
'magenta'	'm'	[1 0 1]	'#FF00FF'	
'yellow'	'y'	[1 1 0]	'#FFFF00'	

Color Name	Short Name	RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
'black'	'k'	[0 0 0]	'#000000'	
'white'	'w'	[1 1 1]	'#FFFFFF'	

Here are the RGB triplets and hexadecimal color codes for the default colors MATLAB uses in many types of plots.

RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
[0 0.4470 0.7410]	'#0072BD'	
[0.8500 0.3250 0.0980]	'#D95319'	
[0.9290 0.6940 0.1250]	'#EDB120'	
[0.4940 0.1840 0.5560]	'#7E2F8E'	
[0.4660 0.6740 0.1880]	'#77AC30'	
[0.3010 0.7450 0.9330]	'#4DBEEE'	
[0.6350 0.0780 0.1840]	'#A2142F'	

Example: 'blue'

Example: [0 0 1]

### highlightColor — Word highlight color









[0.8510 0.3255 0.0980] (default) | RGB triplet | character vector containing a color name

Word highlight color, specified as an RGB triplet, or a character vector containing a color name. The software highlights the largest words with this color.




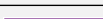
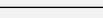
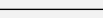

RGB triplets and hexadecimal color codes are useful for specifying custom colors.

- An RGB triplet is a three-element row vector whose elements specify the intensities of the red, green, and blue components of the color. The intensities must be in the range [0,1]; for example, [0.4 0.6 0.7].
- A hexadecimal color code is a character vector or a string scalar that starts with a hash symbol (#) followed by three or six hexadecimal digits, which can range from 0 to F. The values are not case sensitive. Thus, the color codes '#FF8800', '#ff8800', '#F80', and '#f80' are equivalent.

Alternatively, you can specify some common colors by name. This table lists the named color options, the equivalent RGB triplets, and hexadecimal color codes.

Color Name	Short Name	RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
'red'	'r'	[1 0 0]	'#FF0000'	
'green'	'g'	[0 1 0]	'#00FF00'	
'blue'	'b'	[0 0 1]	'#0000FF'	
'cyan'	'c'	[0 1 1]	'#00FFFF'	
'magenta'	'm'	[1 0 1]	'#FF00FF'	
'yellow'	'y'	[1 1 0]	'#FFFF00'	
'black'	'k'	[0 0 0]	'#000000'	
'white'	'w'	[1 1 1]	'#FFFFFF'	

Here are the RGB triplets and hexadecimal color codes for the default colors MATLAB uses in many types of plots.

RGB Triplet	Hexadecimal Color Code	Appearance
[0 0.4470 0.7410]	'#0072BD'	
[0.8500 0.3250 0.0980]	'#D95319'	
[0.9290 0.6940 0.1250]	'#EDB120'	
[0.4940 0.1840 0.5560]	'#7E2F8E'	
[0.4660 0.6740 0.1880]	'#77AC30'	
[0.3010 0.7450 0.9330]	'#4DBEEE'	
[0.6350 0.0780 0.1840]	'#A2142F'	

Example: 'blue'

Example: [0 0 1]

### Shape — Shape of word cloud

'oval' (default) | 'rectangle'

Shape of word cloud chart, specified as 'oval' or 'rectangle'.

Example: 'rectangle'

## Output Arguments

### **wc** — WordCloudChart object

WordCloudChart object

WordCloudChart object. You can modify the properties of a WordCloudChart after it is created. For more information, see WordCloudChart Properties.

## More About

### Language Considerations

For string input, the `wordcloud` and `wordCloudCounts` functions use English, Japanese, German, and Korean tokenization, stop word removal, and word normalization.

For other languages, you might need to manually preprocess your text data and specify unique words and corresponding sizes in `wordcloud`.

To specify word sizes in `wordcloud`, input your data as a table or arrays containing the unique words and corresponding sizes.

## See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `textscatter` | `textscatter3` | `tokenizedDocument` | `wordCloudCounts`

## Topics

“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

### Introduced in R2017b

## wordCloudCounts

Count words for word cloud creation

### Syntax

```
T = wordCloudCounts(str)
```

### Description

`T = wordCloudCounts(str)` tokenizes and preprocesses the text in `str` for word cloud creation and returns a table `T` of words and frequency counts. The function supports English, Japanese, German, and Korean text.

### Examples

#### Word Cloud Frequency Counts

Extract the text from `sonnets.txt` using `extractFileText`.

```
str = extractFileText("sonnets.txt");
```

View the first sonnet.

```
i = strfind(str,"I");  
ii = strfind(str,"II");  
start = i(1);  
fin = ii(1);  
extractBetween(str,start,fin-1)
```

```
ans =  
    "I
```

```
    From fairest creatures we desire increase,  
    That thereby beauty's rose might never die,  
    But as the ripper should by time decease,
```

```

His tender heir might bear his memory:
But thou, contracted to thine own bright eyes,
Feed'st thy light's flame with self-substantial fuel,
Making a famine where abundance lies,
Thy self thy foe, to thy sweet self too cruel:
Thou that art now the world's fresh ornament,
And only herald to the gaudy spring,
Within thine own bud buriest thy content,
And tender churl mak'st waste in niggarding:
    Pity the world, or else this glutton be,
    To eat the world's due, by the grave and thee.

```

"

Tokenize and preprocess the sonnets text and create a table of word frequency counts.

```
T = wordCloudCounts(str);
head(T)
```

ans=8x2 table

Word	Count
"thy"	281
"thou"	235
"love"	188
"thee"	162
"eyes"	90
"doth"	88
"make"	63
"mine"	63

## Input Arguments

### **str** — Input text

string array | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input text, specified as a string array, character vector, or cell array of character vectors.

For string input, the `wordcloud` and `wordCloudCounts` functions use English, Japanese, German, and Korean tokenization, stop word removal, and word normalization.

Example: ["an example of a short document"; "a second short document"]

Data Types: string | char | cell

## Output Arguments

### T — Table of word counts

table

Table of words counts sorted in order of importance. The table has columns:

Word	String scalar of the word.
Count	The number of times the word appears in the documents. The function groups the counts of words that differ only by case or have a common stem according to <code>normalizeWords</code> . For example, the function groups the counts for "walk", "Walking", "walking", and "walks".

## More About

### Language Considerations

For string input, the `wordcloud` and `wordCloudCounts` functions use English, Japanese, German, and Korean tokenization, stop word removal, and word normalization.

## See Also

`bagOfNgrams` | `bagOfWords` | `textscatter` | `textscatter3` | `tokenizedDocument` | `wordcloud`

## Topics

“Visualize Text Data Using Word Clouds”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”



**Introduced in R2017b**

# wordEmbedding

Word embedding model to map words to vectors and back

## Description

A word embedding, popularized by the word2vec, GloVe, and fastText libraries, maps words in a vocabulary to real vectors.

The vectors attempt to capture the semantics of the words, so that similar words have similar vectors. Some embeddings also capture relationships between words, such as "*king is to queen as man is to woman*". In vector form, this relationship is  $king - man + woman = queen$ .

## Creation

Create a word embedding by loading a pretrained embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`, reading an embedding from a file using `readWordEmbedding`, or by training an embedding using `trainWordEmbedding`.

## Properties

### **Dimension — Dimension of word embedding**

positive integer

Dimension of the word embedding, specified as a positive integer.

Example: 300

### **Vocabulary — Unique words in model**

string vector

Unique words in the model, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: `string`

## Object Functions

<code>vec2word</code>	Map embedding vector to word
<code>word2vec</code>	Map word to embedding vector
<code>isVocabularyWord</code>	Test if word is member of word embedding or encoding
<code>writeWordEmbedding</code>	Write word embedding file

## Examples

### Download fastText Support Package

Download and install the Text Analytics Toolbox Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package.

Type `fastTextWordEmbedding` at the command line.

```
fastTextWordEmbedding
```

If the Text Analytics Toolbox Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package is not installed, then the function provides a link to the required support package in the Add-On Explorer. To install the support package, click the link, and then click **Install**. Check that the installation is successful by typing `emb = fastTextWordEmbedding` at the command line.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
```

```
emb =
```

```
wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 300
Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

If the required support package is installed, then the function returns a `wordEmbedding` object.

### Map Words to Vectors and Back

Load a pretrained word embedding using `fastTextWordEmbedding`. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model *for fastText English 16 Billion Token Word*

*Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding
emb =
  wordEmbedding with properties:
    Dimension: 300
    Vocabulary: [1×1000000 string]
```

Map the words "Italy", "Rome", and "Paris" to vectors using `word2vec`.

```
italy = word2vec(emb, "Italy");
rome = word2vec(emb, "Rome");
paris = word2vec(emb, "Paris");
```

Map the vector `italy - rome + paris` to a word using `vec2word`.

```
word = vec2word(emb, italy - rome + paris)
word =
  "France"
```

## Convert Documents to Sequences of Word Vectors

Convert an array of tokenized documents to sequences of word vectors using a pretrained word embedding.

Load a pretrained word embedding using the `fastTextWordEmbedding` function. This function requires Text Analytics Toolbox™ Model for *fastText English 16 Billion Token Word Embedding* support package. If this support package is not installed, then the function provides a download link.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Load the weather reports data and create a `tokenizedDocument` array.

```
filename = "weatherReports.csv";
data = readtable(filename, 'TextType', 'string');
textData = data.event_narrative;
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Convert the documents to sequences of word vectors using `doc2sequence`. The `doc2sequence` function, by default, left-pads the sequences to have the same length. When converting large collections of documents using a high-dimensional word embedding, padding can require large amounts of memory. To prevent the function from padding the data, set the `'PaddingDirection'` option to `'none'`. Alternatively, you can control the amount of padding using the `'Length'` option.

```
sequences = doc2sequence(emb,documents,'PaddingDirection','none');
```

View the sizes of the first 10 sequences. Each sequence is  $D$ -by- $S$  matrix, where  $D$  is the embedding dimension, and  $S$  is the number of word vectors in the sequence.

```
sequences(1:10)
```

```
ans = 10x1 cell array
    {300x8  single}
    {300x39 single}
    {300x14 single}
    {300x14 single}
    {300x0  single}
    {300x15 single}
    {300x20 single}
    {300x6  single}
    {300x21 single}
    {300x10 single}
```

## Read Word Embedding from Text File

Read the example word embedding. This model was derived by analyzing text from Wikipedia.

```
filename = "exampleWordEmbedding.vec";
emb = readWordEmbedding(filename)
```

```
emb =
    wordEmbedding with properties:

        Dimension: 50
        Vocabulary: [1x9999 string]
```

Explore the word embedding using `word2vec` and `vec2word`.

```
king = word2vec(emb, "king");
man = word2vec(emb, "man");
woman = word2vec(emb, "woman");
word = vec2word(emb, king - man + woman)

word =
"queen"
```

## Write Word Embedding to File

Train a word embedding and write it to a text file.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str, newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Train a word embedding using `trainWordEmbedding`.

```
emb = trainWordEmbedding(documents)
```

```
Training: 100% Loss: 3.08807 Remaining time: 0 hours 0 minutes.
```

```
emb =
wordEmbedding with properties:

    Dimension: 100
    Vocabulary: [1x401 string]
```

Write the word embedding to a text file.

```
filename = "exampleSonnetsEmbedding.vec";
writeWordEmbedding(emb, filename)
```

Read the word embedding file using `readWordEmbedding`.

```
emb = readWordEmbedding(filename)

emb =
wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 100  
Vocabulary: [1x401 string]
```

## See Also

```
doc2sequence | fastTextWordEmbedding | tokenizedDocument |  
trainWordEmbedding | vec2word | word2vec | wordEmbeddingLayer |  
wordEncoding
```

## Topics

[“Train a Sentiment Classifier”](#)  
[“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”](#)  
[“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”](#)  
[“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”](#)

**Introduced in R2017b**

# wordEmbeddingLayer

Word embedding layer for deep learning networks

## Description

A word embedding layer maps word indices to vectors.

Use a word embedding layer in a deep learning long short-term memory (LSTM) network. An LSTM network is a type of recurrent neural network (RNN) that can learn long-term dependencies between time steps of sequence data. A word embedding layer maps a sequence of word indices to embedding vectors and learns the word embedding during training.

This layer requires Deep Learning Toolbox™.

## Creation

## Syntax

```
layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(dimension,numWords)
layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(dimension,numWords,Name,Value)
```

## Description

`layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(dimension,numWords)` creates a word embedding layer and specifies the embedding dimension and vocabulary size.

`layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(dimension,numWords,Name,Value)` sets optional properties on page 1-525 using one or more name-value pairs. Enclose each property name in single quotes.



# Properties

## Word Embedding

### Dimension — Dimension of word embedding

positive integer

Dimension of the word embedding, specified as a positive integer.

Example: 300

### NumWords — Number of words in model

positive integer

Number of words in the model, specified as a positive integer. If the number of unique words in the training data is greater than `NumWords`, then the layer maps the out-of-vocabulary words to the same vector.

## Parameters and Initialization

### WeightsInitializer — Function to initialize weights

'narrow-normal' (default) | 'glorot' | 'he' | 'orthogonal' | 'zeros' | 'ones' | function handle

Function to initialize the weights, specified as one of the following:

- 'narrow-normal' - Initialize the weights by independently sampling from a normal distribution with zero mean and standard deviation 0.01.
- 'glorot' - Initialize the weights with the Glorot initializer [1] (also known as Xavier initializer). The Glorot initializer independently samples from a uniform distribution with zero mean and variance  $2 / (\text{numIn} + \text{numOut})$ , where  $\text{numIn} = \text{NumWords} + 1$  and  $\text{numOut} = \text{Dimension}$ .
- 'he' - Initialize the weights with the He initializer [2]. The He initializer samples from a normal distribution with zero mean and variance  $2 / \text{numIn}$ , where  $\text{numIn} = \text{NumWords} + 1$ .
- 'orthogonal' - Initialize the input weights with  $Q$ , the orthogonal matrix given by the QR decomposition of  $Z = QR$  for a random matrix  $Z$  sampled from a unit normal distribution. [3]

- 'zeros' - Initialize the weights with zeros.
- 'ones' - Initialize the weights with ones.
- Function handle - Initialize the weights with a custom function. If you specify a function handle, then the function must be of the form `weights = func(sz)`, where `sz` is the size of the weights.

The layer only initializes the weights when the `Weights` property is empty.

Data Types: `char` | `string` | `function_handle`

## **Weights — Layer weights**

matrix

Layer weights, specified as a `Dimension-by-(NumWords+1)` array.

For input integers `i` less than or equal to `NumWords`, the layer outputs the vector `Weights(:,i)`. Otherwise, the layer maps outputs the vector `Weights(:,NumWords+1)`.

## **Learn Rate and Regularization**

### **WeightLearnRateFactor — Learning rate factor for weights**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar

Learning rate factor for the weights, specified as a nonnegative scalar.

The software multiplies this factor by the global learning rate to determine the learning rate for the weights in this layer. For example, if `WeightLearnRateFactor` is 2, then the learning rate for the weights in this layer is twice the current global learning rate. The software determines the global learning rate based on the settings specified with the `trainingOptions` function.

Example: 2

### **WeightL2Factor — L2 regularization factor for weights**

1 (default) | nonnegative scalar

L2 regularization factor for the weights, specified as a nonnegative scalar.

The software multiplies this factor by the global L2 regularization factor to determine the L2 regularization for the weights in this layer. For example, if `WeightL2Factor` is 2, then the L2 regularization for the weights in this layer is twice the global L2 regularization

factor. You can specify the global L2 regularization factor using the `trainingOptions` function.

Example: 2

## Layer

### **Name — Layer name**

' ' (default) | character vector | string scalar

Layer name, specified as a character vector or a string scalar. If `Name` is set to ' ', then the software automatically assigns a name at training time.

Data Types: `char` | `string`

### **NumInputs — Number of inputs**

1 (default)

Number of inputs of the layer. This layer accepts a single input only.

Data Types: `double`

### **InputNames — Input names**

{'in'} (default)

Input names of the layer. This layer accepts a single input only.

Data Types: `cell`

### **NumOutputs — Number of outputs**

1 (default)

Number of outputs of the layer. This layer has a single output only.

Data Types: `double`

### **OutputNames — Output names**

{'out'} (default)

Output names of the layer. This layer has a single output only.

Data Types: `cell`

## Examples

### Create Word Embedding Layer

Create a word embedding layer with embedding dimension 300 and 5000 words.

```
layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(300,5000)

layer =
  WordEmbeddingLayer with properties:
    Name: ''

    Hyperparameters
      Dimension: 300
      NumWords: 5000

    Learnable Parameters
      Weights: []

  Show all properties
```

Include a word embedding layer in an LSTM network.

```
inputSize = 1;
embeddingDimension = 300;
numWords = 5000;
numHiddenUnits = 200;
numClasses = 10;

layers = [
  sequenceInputLayer(inputSize)
  wordEmbeddingLayer(embeddingDimension,numWords)
  lstmLayer(numHiddenUnits,'OutputMode','last')
  fullyConnectedLayer(numClasses)
  softmaxLayer
  classificationLayer]

layers =
  6x1 Layer array with layers:

    1 '' Sequence Input          Sequence input with 1 dimensions
```

```

2 '' Word Embedding Layer Word embedding layer with 300 dimensions and 500
3 '' LSTM LSTM with 200 hidden units
4 '' Fully Connected 10 fully connected layer
5 '' Softmax softmax
6 '' Classification Output crossentropyx

```

### Initialize Word Embedding Layer with Pretrained Word Embedding

To initialize a word embedding layer in a deep learning network with the weights from a pretrained word embedding, use the `word2vec` function to extract the layer weights and set the 'Weights' name-value pair of the `wordEmbeddingLayer` function. The word embedding layer expects columns of word vectors, so you must transpose the output of the `word2vec` function.

```

emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;

words = emb.Vocabulary;
dimension = emb.Dimension;
numWords = numel(words);

layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(dimension,numWords,...
    'Weights',word2vec(emb,words)')

```

```

layer =
    WordEmbeddingLayer with properties:

```

```

    Name: ''

```

```

    Hyperparameters

```

```

        Dimension: 300

```

```

        NumWords: 999994

```

```

    Learnable Parameters

```

```

        Weights: [300x999994 single]

```

```

    Show all properties

```

To create the corresponding word encoding from the word embedding, input the word embedding vocabulary to the `wordEncoding` function as a list of words.

```

enc = wordEncoding(words)

```

```
enc =  
    wordEncoding with properties:  
  
        NumWords: 999994  
        Vocabulary: [1×999994 string]
```

## References

- [1] Glorot, Xavier, and Yoshua Bengio. "Understanding the difficulty of training deep feedforward neural networks." In *Proceedings of the thirteenth international conference on artificial intelligence and statistics*, pp. 249-256. 2010.
- [2] He, Kaiming, Xiangyu Zhang, Shaoqing Ren, and Jian Sun. "Delving deep into rectifiers: Surpassing human-level performance on imagenet classification." In *Proceedings of the IEEE international conference on computer vision*, pp. 1026-1034. 2015.
- [3] Saxe, Andrew M., James L. McClelland, and Surya Ganguli. "Exact solutions to the nonlinear dynamics of learning in deep linear neural networks." *arXiv preprint arXiv:1312.6120* (2013).

## See Also

`doc2sequence` | `fastTextWordEmbedding` | `lstmLayer` | `sequenceInputLayer` | `tokenizedDocument` | `trainNetwork` | `trainWordEmbedding` | `word2vec` | `wordEncoding`

## Topics

- "Train a Sentiment Classifier"
- "Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning"
- "Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots"
- "Prepare Text Data for Analysis"
- "Deep Learning in MATLAB" (Deep Learning Toolbox)
- "List of Deep Learning Layers" (Deep Learning Toolbox)

## Introduced in R2018b

# wordEncoding

Word encoding model to map words to indices and back

## Description

A word encoding maps words in a vocabulary to numeric indices.

To encode documents as matrices of word or n-gram counts, use `encode`.

## Creation

## Syntax

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents)
enc = wordEncoding(words)
enc = wordEncoding(documents, Name, Value)
```

## Description

`enc = wordEncoding(documents)` creates a word encoding from the words in `documents`.

`enc = wordEncoding(words)` creates a word encoding from an array of words.

`enc = wordEncoding(documents, Name, Value)` specifies additional options using one or more name-value pair arguments. For example, `'Order'`, `'frequency'` assigns lower indices to more frequent words.

## Input Arguments

### **documents** — Input documents

`tokenizedDocument` array

Input documents, specified as a `tokenizedDocument` array.

## **words — Input words**

string vector | character vector | cell array of character vectors

Input words, specified as a string vector, character vector, or cell array of character vectors. If you specify `words` as a character vector, then the function treats the argument as a single word.

Data Types: `string` | `char` | `cell`

## **Name-Value Pair Arguments**

Specify optional comma-separated pairs of `Name`, `Value` arguments. `Name` is the argument name and `Value` is the corresponding value. `Name` must appear inside quotes. You can specify several name and value pair arguments in any order as `Name1, Value1, . . . , NameN, ValueN`.

Example: `'Order'`, `'frequency'` sorts the indices by the total frequency in the documents in descending order.

## **Order — Sorting of indices**

`'first-seen'` (default) | `'frequency'`

Sorting of indices, specified as the comma-separated pair consisting of `'Order'` and one of the following:

- `'first-seen'` - Assign indices to the words in the order in which they occur in the documents.
- `'frequency'` - Assign indices to the words sorted by total frequency in the documents in descending order.

If `'Order'` is `'frequency'` and multiple words have the same frequency, then the function does not assign indices in any particular order.

## **MaxNumWords — Maximum number of words to encode**

`Inf` (default) | positive integer

Maximum number of words to encode, specified as a positive integer or `Inf`. The function first sorts the indices according to the `'Order'` option and then encodes the top `MaxNumWords` words. If `MaxNumWords` is `Inf`, then the function encodes all the words in the input documents.



## Properties

### NumWords — Number of words in model

nonnegative integer

Number of words in the model, specified as a nonnegative integer.

### Vocabulary — Unique words in model

string vector

Unique words in the model, specified as a string vector.

Data Types: string

## Object Functions

ind2word            Map encoding index to word

word2ind            Map word to encoding index

isVocabularyWord    Test if word is member of word embedding or encoding

## Examples

### Create Word Encoding

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
documents(1:10)
```

ans =

```
10x1 tokenizedDocument:
```

```
70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die r
```

```
71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
```

```
65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega
61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants sa
68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make su
64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappea
70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j
70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueles
69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

Create a word encoding.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents)

enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:
    NumWords: 3092
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
```

## Create Word Encoding from Word Embedding

To create a word encoding from a word embedding, input the word embedding vocabulary to the `wordEncoding` function as a list of words.

Load pretrained word embedding.

```
emb = fastTextWordEmbedding;
```

Extract the vocabulary.

```
words = emb.Vocabulary;
```

Create a word encoding using the vocabulary.

```
enc = wordEncoding(words)

enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:
    NumWords: 999994
```

```
Vocabulary: [1×999994 string]
```

To initialize the corresponding word embedding layer in a deep learning network with the word embedding weights, use the `word2vec` function to extract the layer weights and set the 'Weights' name-value pair of the `wordEmbeddingLayer` function. The word embedding layer expects columns of word vectors, so you must transpose the output of the `word2vec` function.

```
dimension = emb.Dimension;
numWords = numel(words);

layer = wordEmbeddingLayer(dimension,numWords, ...
    'Weights',word2vec(emb,words)')

layer =
    WordEmbeddingLayer with properties:

        Name: ''

    Hyperparameters
        Dimension: 300
        NumWords: 999994

    Learnable Parameters
        Weights: [300×999994 single]

    Show all properties
```

## Create Word Encoding of Top Words in Documents

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
documents(1:10)
```

```
ans =
  10x1 tokenizedDocument:

    70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die n
    71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
    65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
    71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega
    61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants sa
    68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make su
    64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappea
    70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j
    70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueles
    69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

Create a word encoding. Sort the indices by frequency and encode only the top 100 words.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents, ...
    'Order','frequency', ...
    'MaxNumWords',100)
```

```
enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:

    NumWords: 100
  Vocabulary: [1x100 string]
```

View the words corresponding to indices 1, 2, and 3 using the `ind2word` function.

```
idx = [1 2 3];
words = ind2word(enc,idx)

words = 1x3 string array
    "thy"    "thou"    "love"
```

## Map Encoding Indices to Words

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
documents(1:10)
```

```
ans =
  10x1 tokenizedDocument:

    70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die r
    71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
    65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
    71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega
    61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants s
    68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make sw
    64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappea
    70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j
    70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless
    69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

Create a word encoding.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents)

enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:

    NumWords: 3092
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
```

View the words corresponding to indices 1, 3, and 5 using the `ind2word` function.

```
idx = [1 3 5];
words = ind2word(enc,idx)

words = 1x3 string array
    "fairest"    "desire"    "thereby"
```

## Map Words to Encoding Indices

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words

separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";
str = extractFileText(filename);
textData = split(str,newline);
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
documents(1:10)
```

```
ans =
  10x1 tokenizedDocument:

    70 tokens: fairest creatures desire increase thereby beautys rose might never die
    71 tokens: forty winters shall besiege thy brow dig deep trenches thy beautys field
    65 tokens: look thy glass tell face thou viewest time face form another whose fresh
    71 tokens: unthrifty loveliness why dost thou spend upon thy self thy beautys lega
    61 tokens: hours gentle work frame lovely gaze every eye doth dwell play tyrants s
    68 tokens: let winters ragged hand deface thee thy summer ere thou distilld make sw
    64 tokens: lo orient gracious light lifts up burning head eye doth homage newappear
    70 tokens: music hear why hearst thou music sadly sweets sweets war joy delights j
    70 tokens: fear wet widows eye thou consumst thy self single life ah thou issueless
    69 tokens: shame deny thou bearst love thy self art unprovident grant thou wilt th
```

Create a word encoding.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents)
```

```
enc =
  wordEncoding with properties:

    NumWords: 3092
    Vocabulary: [1x3092 string]
```

Map the words "rose", "love", and "beauty" to encoding indices using the `word2ind` function.

```
words = ["rose" "love" "beauty"];
idx = word2ind(enc,words)
```

```
idx = 1x3

     7     387     79
```

## Convert Documents to Sequences of Word Indices

Load the weather reports data and create a `tokenizedDocument` array.

```
filename = "weatherReports.csv";  
data = readtable(filename, 'TextType', 'string');  
textData = data.event_narrative;  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Create a word encoding.

```
enc = wordEncoding(documents);
```

Convert the documents to sequences of word indices.

```
sequences = doc2sequence(enc, documents);
```

View the sizes of the first 10 sequences. Each sequence is a 1-by- $S$  vector, where  $S$  is the number of word indices in the sequence. Because the sequences are padded,  $S$  is constant.

```
sequences(1:10)
```

```
ans=10x1 cell  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}  
    {1x930 double}
```

## See Also

`doc2sequence` | `fastTextWordEmbedding` | `ind2word` | `isVocabularyWord` | `tokenizedDocument` | `word2ind` | `word2vec` | `wordEmbedding` | `wordEmbeddingLayer`

## **Topics**

“Train a Sentiment Classifier”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

**Introduced in R2018b**



# writeTextDocument

Write documents to text file

## Syntax

```
writeTextDocument(documents, filename)
writeTextDocument(documents, filename, 'Append', true)
```

## Description

`writeTextDocument(documents, filename)` writes `documents` to the specified text file. The function writes one document per line with a space between each word in UTF-8.

`writeTextDocument(documents, filename, 'Append', true)` appends to the file instead of overwriting.

## Examples

### Write Documents to Text File

Write an array of documents to a text file.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
  "an example of a short sentence"
  "a second short sentence"])

documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    4 tokens: a second short sentence

filename = "documents.txt";
writeTextDocument(documents, filename)
```

## Append Documents to Text File

Write an array of documents to a text file by appending the documents one at a time.

Create an array of tokenized documents.

```
documents = tokenizedDocument([
    "an example of a short sentence"
    "a second short sentence"])

documents =
  2x1 tokenizedDocument:

    6 tokens: an example of a short sentence
    4 tokens: a second short sentence
```

Write the first document to the file.

```
filename = "documents.txt";
writeTextDocument(documents(1), filename)
```

View the contents of the file using `extractFileText`.

```
str = extractFileText(filename)

str =
"an example of a short sentence"
```

Append the second document to the text file.

```
writeTextDocument(documents(2), filename, 'Append', true)
```

View the contents of the file using `extractFileText`.

```
str = extractFileText(filename)

str =
"an example of a short sentence
a second short sentence"
```

## Input Arguments

### **documents — Input documents**

tokenizedDocument array

Input documents, specified as a tokenizedDocument array.

### **filename — Name of file**

string scalar | character vector

Name of the file, specified as a string scalar or character vector.

Data Types: string | char

## See Also

extractFileText | extractHTMLText | readPDFFormData | tokenizedDocument

## Topics

“Extract Text Data from Files”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

“Create Simple Text Model for Classification”

**Introduced in R2017b**

## writeWordEmbedding

Write word embedding file

### Syntax

```
writeWordEmbedding(emb, filename)
```

### Description

`writeWordEmbedding(emb, filename)` writes the word embedding `emb` to the file `filename`. The function writes the vocabulary in UTF-8 in `word2vec` text format.

### Examples

#### Write Word Embedding to File

Train a word embedding and write it to a text file.

Load the example data. The file `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt` contains preprocessed versions of Shakespeare's sonnets. The file contains one sonnet per line, with words separated by a space. Extract the text from `sonnetsPreprocessed.txt`, split the text into documents at newline characters, and then tokenize the documents.

```
filename = "sonnetsPreprocessed.txt";  
str = extractFileText(filename);  
textData = split(str, newline);  
documents = tokenizedDocument(textData);
```

Train a word embedding using `trainWordEmbedding`.

```
emb = trainWordEmbedding(documents)
```

```
Training: 100% Loss: 3.08807 Remaining time: 0 hours 0 minutes.
```

```
emb =  
  wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 100  
Vocabulary: [1x401 string]
```

Write the word embedding to a text file.

```
filename = "exampleSonnetsEmbedding.vec";  
writeWordEmbedding(emb, filename)
```

Read the word embedding file using `readWordEmbedding`.

```
emb = readWordEmbedding(filename)
```

```
emb =  
wordEmbedding with properties:
```

```
Dimension: 100  
Vocabulary: [1x401 string]
```

## Input Arguments

### **emb** — Input word embedding

wordEmbedding object

Input word embedding, specified as a wordEmbedding object.

### **filename** — Name of file

string scalar | character vector

Name of the file, specified as a string scalar or character vector.

Data Types: string | char

## See Also

doc2sequence | fastTextWordEmbedding | readWordEmbedding |  
tokenizedDocument | trainWordEmbedding | vec2word | word2vec |  
wordEmbedding | wordEmbeddingLayer | wordEncoding

## **Topics**

“Train a Sentiment Classifier”

“Classify Text Data Using Deep Learning”

“Visualize Word Embeddings Using Text Scatter Plots”

“Prepare Text Data for Analysis”

**Introduced in R2017b**